FIIT/T184

FAO Fisheries Technical Paper No. 184 FIIT/T 184

APR 16 1979

BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR FISHERMEN'S TRAINING

FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS

BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR FISHERMEN'S TRAINING

compiled by

A.v. Brandt

FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS
Rome, 1978

The designations employed and the presentation of material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

M-48

ISBN 92-5-100663-6

The copyright in this book is vested in the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. The book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, by any method or process, without written permission from the copyright holder. Applications for such permission, with a statement of the purpose and extent of the reproduction desired, should be addressed to the Director, Publications Division, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Via delle Terme di Caracalla, 00100 Rome, Italy.

© FAO 1978

PREPARATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

This Bibliography was compiled to assist fishery educators and librarians in building up their fisheries libraries. It lists, at present, only books and literature written in English. Lists of books and literature in French and Spanish are still being compiled by the same author. We hope that their publication will follow shortly.

The present address of Prof. von Brandt is: 2 Hamburg 76, Karlstrasse 32, Federal Republic of Germany.

Distribution:

FAO Fisheries Department
FAO Regional Fishery Officers
Directors of Fisheries
Selector SM
Selector SI
Author

Bibliographic reference:

Brandt, A. von (1978)
FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (184): 176 p.
Bibliography for fishermen's training

Bibliographies. Fishermen. Education. Aquaculture. Fishery economics. Fishing gear. Processing fishery products. Marketing. Public health.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
	INTRODUCTION	
1.	AQUACULTURE	1
2.	BIOLOGY	15
3.	ECONOMICS	40
4.	EDUCATION	51
5.	ENVIRONMENT	58
6.	FISHFINDING	70
7.	FISHING (GEAR AND METHODS)	77
8.	FISHING VESSELS	100
9.	LEGISLATION	113
10.	NETMAKING AND SEAMANSHIP	121
11.	POLLUTION AND CONTAMINATION	128
12.	PROCESSING AND MARKETING	136
13.	SAFETY AND HEALTH	164
	PUBLISHERS' ADDRESSES	172
	SELECTED ENGLISH LANGUAGE JOURNALS FOR FISHING, FISHERIES, BOATBUILDING, FISH UTILIZATION AND STATISTICS	176

INTRODUCTION

Fishery literature, not unlike literature relating to other fields of knowledge, is expanding fast. In fact we have reached the point where even specialists find it difficult to review all new publications pertaining to their particular sector or speciality.

Notwithstanding this expansion, gaps in information still exist. Textbooks, manuals and teacher's guides written expressly for fishery students, teachers and instructors, have still to be produced to fill such gaps.

As a consequence, many fishermen's schools and training centres issue their own texts, usually written by the teachers, which cater to local needs. These are printed or stencilled or otherwise reproduced for the use of their students.

Often teachers have to decide which of several publications available is most suitable for their purpose. Sometimes they are looking for references that will help them refresh their own knowledge or enable them to add to their knowledge. Without a reliable guide on what to read, publications are often consulted at random, just because they happen to be available to the teacher at a given moment. Here and there, of course, efforts have been made by different organizations to publish "reading lists" with reference to new literature which might be consulted for preparing lectures on fishermen's training. FAO has published several lists of this kind, e.g. the Guide to Fishery Education and Training (FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (128) 1973 by R.C. Cole and D.N.F. Hall). In a wider field, UNESCO's Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC) has published an annotated bibliography of textbooks and reference materials in marine science in 1975. In rare instances, some organizations have published (primarily for their own use) standard textbooks on fisheries subjects which have been made available to the general public (e.g. Kanagawa International Fisheries Training Centres in Yokusuka City, Japan).

Among the difficulties encountered with the publication of reading lists, the need for periodical updating should be mentioned. Also, many of the better known publications used for fishermen's training were originally printed in a relatively small number of copies and, therefore, became effectively out of print in a very short time. This is particularly true of many FAO publications, as well as of some material printed in the United Kingdom. Sometimes, these publications are replaced by new revised or expanded editions issued under different titles, and prepared with the cooperation of additional co-authors or by new authors, an alteration which can easily cause confusion.

This Bibliography presents a collection of reading lists covering the fields that are of greatest importance to fishermen's training. In compiling these lists, a number of fishermen's schools in different countries have been consulted as well as experts working in various fisheries branches. To make sure that copies of the recommended publications can be procured for training purposes, enquiries were made with the publishers with regard to available stocks. The enquiries established that many of the more highly recommended and well-known publications were out of print. In some cases, even the publishers themselves could not be located anymore, as the publishing houses concerned had gone out of business. For this reason publications recommended by schools or by experts, but which were out of print, or their availability in doubt, were omitted from the lists. However, it should be emphasized that important publications excluded from the lists in this manner can often be found in libraries and occasionally in second-hand book stores.

Publications covering matters of chiefly local interest have been, with a few exceptions, omitted from the reading lists, even where they were considered of value for the training of staff. The reason for this omission being the assumption that local training institutions would be in a better position to judge which publications are geared to problems peculiar to the local environment.

Popular publications, prepared expressly for the benefit of fishermen who are non-literate or barely literate, and featuring illustrations accompanied by a minimum of text, are specifically identified as such in the reading lists. On the other hand, publications, used at the university level, are similarly identified. The remaining publications may be assumed to relate to requirements for education at the intermediate technical level.

It is acknowledged that some of the most valuable reference works have become very expensive, largely as the result of steeply rising printing costs in recent years. This may make it impossible for most students or fishermen, and even for some schools, to purchase them. Some of the more generously financed schools make sure that their students are provided with essential textbooks by acquiring several copies for their libraries, which are given on loan to individual students. Another possibility for schools to acquire publications is to request organizations engaged in multilateral and bilateral assistance for material issued by them. Occasionally unpriced material published by these

organizations is made available even to individual students on request. Manufacturers of netting materials and ropes, fishing gear and hauling devices, echo sounders and other electronic equipment, marine engines and mechanical equipment, ship yards and some naval architects, producers of feeding material or fertilizers for pond fisheries, etc., may also be approached for free copies of manuals, pamphlets and wall charts suitable for instruction.

This Bibliography lists publications in English, French and Spanish only - the three main FAO working languages. This restriction does not, of course, mean that there are no publications in other languages which could well be of value for fishermen's training. On the contrary, many excellent teaching materials are known to exist in Russian, Japanese, German, and in other languages.

It should be noted that circumstances have prevented FAO from publishing the English, French and Spanish parts of this Bibliography simultaneously, as was originally intended. It was therefore decided to publish separately the already prepared lists of English language publications. It is hoped, however, that the lists of publications in French and Spanish will be ready for publication not later than the first half of 1979.

Perhaps many fishery training and educational institutions might be able to manage with no more than 20 to 50 publications. The size of this bibliography may be explained by the desire to cover all the main fishery disciplines to cater to various levels and types of schools and training establishments, and give them a wider choice in building up their libraries.

The following are the reading lists, arranged in alphabetical order, which make up this bibliography:

Aquaculture	Environment	Legislation
Biology	Fishfinding	Netmaking and seamanship
Economics	Fishing (Gear and Methods)	Pollution
Education	Fishing vessels	Processing
		Safety and health

The individual lists reproduced in the body of the bibliography contain further breakdowns of subject matter. Where a publication relates to more than one field, cross references have been made.

For an educator to select a publication for teaching purposes, obviously more information than the name of the author, title and year of publication, name of publisher, number of pages, reference lists and indices, is required.

The additional information could be in the form of summaries or reviews of the publications listed. In 'Aquatic Sciences and Fisheries Abstracts', an international information journal which covers the fields of science and technology of marine and freshwater environments, abstracts of publications are to be found. Some of these abstracts have been included in this Bibliography. These abstracts are helpful, since they indicate, at a glance, whether or not a publication may be of interest. However, without trying to diminish the usefulness of abstracts, a word of caution is due: abstracts and reviews often reflect the particular bias and approach of the reviewer, or the particular axe the publisher may wish to grind. Abstracts are very often subjective. Thus, this Bibliography is not being produced as an annotated bibliography, as was originally intended. An attempt has been made, instead, to devise a method of presentation that should allow the user of the Bibliography to make his own conclusions as to which publications would appear to be useful for his purposes. This objective is hopefully achieved by offering, besides basic identifying data, also a table of contents (excluding general prefaces, acknowledgements, advertisements, etc.) In a few cases, where publications did not include tables of contents, the compiler made up this gap by extracting relevant data from the text. In other cases, very detailed contents, containing material not essential for the explanation of subject matter, were shortened. Elsewhere, where chapter headings seemed to require clarification, additional remarks were added in brackets to eliminate ambiguities. For cross references such details were omitted to avoid unnecessary repetitions.

Where several editions of a publication have been issued, reference has been made only to the latest edition. In the cases of the more popular books more recent editions than those entered in the lists may have since been published. The user of the Bibliography may find it worthwhile to make enquiries before buying the book concerned. To help with the ordering of publications, the addresses of the publishers are given at the end of the Bibliography. These addresses, and not those mentioned in the bibliographic reference, should be used when placing an order. A list of selected English language journals and periodicals for fishing, fisheries, boatbuilding, fish utilization and statistics is given at the end of this volume.

This Bibliography attempts to cover reference material for fisheries education and training at the time of its publication, i.e. in 1978. With the publication, in years to come, of new (and

possibly better) books, revised editions of present books, and books inevitably becoming out of print, the value of this Bibliography will diminish. At some point FAO may decide to issue a revised edition. Thus users of the Bibliography are invited to offer any comments and suggestions to the Organization drawing attention, in particular, to material that they have found to be especially useful.

It is hoped that the Bibliography will serve as a useful guide for fishery schools, colleges and training centres intent on building up a relevant and functional fisheries library, at minimal cost. It will be appreciated if any problems, queries, or requests for clarification, relating to the use of this Bibliography were directed to the Fishery Industries Division, Fisheries Department, FAO, Rome.

AQUACULTURE

Fish, shellfish and seaweed, farming and husbandry in freshwater, brackish and seawater.

Bard, J. et al., Handbook of tropical fish culture. Nogent-sur-Marne, Centre Technique Forestier
1976 Tropical, 165 p., 126 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	The fishes and their environment	5
1.1	The fish (anatomy, biology)	7 - 12
1.2	Environment of fish	12 - 17
2.	Intensive fish culture	19
2.1	Definitions and general features	21
2.2	Ponds for intensive fish culture	21 - 67
2.3	Intensive fish culture management in ponds	67 - 96
3.	Extensive fish culture	109
3.1	Definition	111 - 112
3.2	Where to practise extensive fish culture?	112 - 113
3.3	Works to be carried out to make a reservoir suitable for extensive fish culture in practice	114 - 116
3.4	Extensive fish culture in practices	116 - 126
4.	Questions common to extensive and intensive fish culture	127
4.1	Aquatic regulation	129 - 131
4.2	Public health	131 - 138
4.3	Rearing of other animals combined with fish culture (fish-cum-duck, cum-pig, cum-poultry culture)	138 - 143
5.	Fish culture policy	145
5.1	The place of fish culture in the rural economy	147 - 149
5.2	Action of extension services	149 - 150
Appendixes		151
1.	Use of the clisimeter	152 - 155
2.	Composition of concretes and mortars to be used in fish culture	156
3.	Estimate in kind for a concrete monk	157
4.	Working estimate for two 200 m^2 ponds	158
	Working estimate for a 1 000 m^2 barrage-pond	158
	Working estimate for a 10 000 m^2 barrage-pond	159
5.	Transportation of fish for fish culture in polyethylene bags	160 - 161
6.	Form for intensive fish culture operation	162 - 163
7.	Form for extensive fish culture operation	164

Bardach, J.E., J.H. Ryther and W.O. McLarney, Aquaculture: the farming and husbandry of freshwater
1972 and marine organisms. New York, John Wiley & Sons, 868 p., figs.

		Pages
1.	General principles and economics	1 - 28
2.	Culture of the common carp (Cyprinus carpio)	29 - 74
3.	Chinese carp culture	75 - 120
4.	Culture of the Indian carps	121 - 146
5.	Early attempts at fish farming in the south central United States using buffalofish and paddlefish	147 - 158
6.	Catfish culture in the United States	159 - 205
7.	Culture of catfishes native to Australasia and Europe	206 - 217
8.	Culture of labyrinth fishes (family Anabantidae)	218 - 226
9.	Culture of pikes and perches	227 - 233
10.	Black bass and sunfishes (family Centrarchidae) in fish culture	234 - 240
11.	Miscellaneous Asian pond fishes	241 - 243
12.	Culture of African freshwater fishes other than Tilapia spp.	244 - 257
13.	Culture of native freshwater fishes of Latin America	258 - 262
14.	Experimental fish culture in Australia	263 - 268
15.	Frog culture	269 - 284
16.	Culture of mullets (Mugilidae)	285 - 312
17.	Milkfish culture	313 - 349
18.	Culture of Tilapia	350 - 384
19.	Culture of true eels (Anguilla spp.)	385 - 395
20.	Commercial culture of freshwater salmonids (genera Salmo, Salvelinus, Thymallus and Hucho)	396 - 449
21.	Culture of the Pacific salmons (Oncorhynchus spp.)	450 - 502
22.	Culture of coregonid fishes in the Soviet Union	503 - 507
23.	Culture of smelts and ayu	508 - 511
24.	Culture of cyprinids native to Europe and Asiatic Russia	512 - 519
25.	Culture of sturgeon	520 - 527
26.	Culture of miscellaneous anadromous fishes (shad and striped bass)	528 - 530
27.	Culture of pompano	531 - 540
28.	Culture of miscellaneous brackish water and inshore marine fishes	541 - 556
29.	Japanese yellowtail culture	557 - 565
30.	Culture of pelagic fishes other than yellowtail	566 - 574
31.	Culture of marine flatfishes	575 - 586
32.	Shrimp culture	587 - 632
33.	Lobster culture	633 - 650
34.	Culture of freshwater crayfish	651 - 667
35.	Culture of crabs (Brachyura)	668 - 673
36.	Oyster culture	674 - 742
37.	Culture of clams and cockles	743 - 756
38.	Culture of scallops	757 - 759
39.	Culture of mussels	760 - 776
40.	Culture of marine gastropods, especially abalone	777 - 785
41.	Culture of squid	786 - 789
42.	Culture of seaweeds	790 - 814
43.	Culture of edible freshwater plants	815 - 819
	Appendix: Pond siting and construction	821 - 836
	Indices	837 - 868

References at the end of each chapter

Chen, T.P., Aquaculture practices in Taiwan. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 161 p., 98 figs.,
1976 1 map of Taiwan

		Pages
1.	Milkfish farming	1 - 15
2.	Eel farming	17 - 28

3. Polyculture of Chinese carps in freshwater ponds 29 - 41
4. Culture of grey mullet 43 - 53
5. Tilapia culture 55 - 61
6. Culture of snakehead 63 - 69
7. Culture of walking catfish 71 - 76
8. Culture of mud skipper 77 - 83
9. Oyster culture 85 - 93
10. Culture of clam, Meretrix lusoria 95 - 102
11. Culture of cockle, Anadara granosa 103 - 105
12. Culture of freshwater clam, Corbicula fluminea 107 - 110
13. Shrimp culture 111 - 122
14. Crab culture 123 - 128
15. Frog culture 129 - 135
16. Culture of soft-shell turtle 137 - 144
17. Culture of Gracilaria (red alga) 145 - 149
18. Other cultured species (rainbow trout, ayu, catfishes, swamp eel, pond loach, Kuruma shrimp, giant freshwater prawn, viviparous snails) 151 - 161

References at the end of each chapter

Forrest, D.M., Eel capture, culture, processing and marketing. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 1976 203 p., 66 photographs, 24 figs., and 49 tables

Pages

1. Elver capture, holding and marketing

1.1 An outline of the life cycle of the eel 21 - 24
1.2 World wide distribution of eels commercially exploited 24 - 28
1.3 Some elver migration patterns 28 - 29
1.4 Factors influencing elver migrations 30 - 31
1.5 Elver catching methods 31 - 34
1.6 Elver holding 35 - 37
1.7 Elver transportation 37 - 39
1.8 Elver marketing 39 - 44

2. Eel culture

2.1 Extensive culture 45 - 46
2.2 Intensive culture 46 - 48
2.3 Culture methods 48 - 51
2.4 Cultured eel diseases 51 - 56
2.5 European eel diseases 56 - 57
2.6 Eel feeds 57
2.7 Elver feed 60 - 64
2.8 Environment 68 - 75
2.9 Pond design and equipment 75 - 85
2.10 Supplementary equipment 85 - 99
2.11 Experimental culture ponds 99 - 102
2.12 Production and management of eels 102 - 110
2.13 A decision whether or not to culture eels 110 - 121

3. Eel capture

3.1 Introduction 123
3.2 Eel behaviour patterns 123 - 128
3.3 Methods used to catch brown eels 128 - 139
3.4 Methods used to catch silver eels 139 - 144
3.5 Eel holding and transportation 144 - 152

4. Eel processing 153 - 171

5. Eel marketing

5.1 Introduction 173
5.2 Weight of wild eels caught annually 174 - 177
5.3 Value of wild eels caught annually 178 - 180
5.4 Local currency value of wild eels caught 180 - 182
5.5 Average prices paid per ton to eel catchers 182 - 183
5.6 Eel exports from principal exporting countries 183 - 186
5.7 Some notes on different European wholesale markets 187 - 191

References 193 - 196

Index 197 - 203

Hickling, C.F., 1971 Fish culture. London, Faber & Faber, 317 p., 5 coloured and 66 monochrome pictures, tables

Pages

1. Introduction 17 - 22
2. Historical 23 - 28
3. Different kinds of fish culture 29 - 32
4. The water 33 - 49
5. The soil 50 - 61
6. The dry period 62 - 66
7. Pond construction and management 67 - 86
8. Pond management 87 - 96
9. Fertilizers 97 - 124
10. Supplementary feeding 125 - 150
11. Supplementary foods 151 - 183
12. Fish culture in brackish and seawater 184 - 206
13. Fish culture in running water 207 - 217
14. Fish culture in rice fields 218 - 233
15. Stocking rates, and time:yields 234 - 251
16. Fish genetics and hybridization 252 - 264
17. Fish diseases 265 - 276
18. Fishponds and public health 277 - 283

Bibliography 284 - 302

Indices 303 - 317

Huet, M., 1973 Textbooks of fish culture, breeding and cultivation of fish. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 436 p., 503 figs.

Page

Preliminary notes 1 - 5

Ponds and fish suitable for cultivation 6

1. Construction and layout of ponds 6 - 40
2. Natural food and growth of cultivated fish 41 - 56

Techniques and methods of fish cultivation 57 - 58

3. Breeding and cultivation of salmonids 59 - 110
4. Breeding and cultivation of cyprinids 111 - 150
5. Special types of fish cultivation for restocking: pike, coregonids, shad, grayling, sturgeon, pejerrey or silversides 151 - 173
6. Breeding and cultivation of perciformes 174 - 208
7. Breeding and cultivation of catfish 209 - 216

8. Special types of fish breeding and cultivation (eels, in ricefields, in brackish water) 217 - 241
9. Regional fresh water fish culture (Europe, Near and Middle East, Indo-Pacific region, Africa, Latin America 242 - 266
Appendix: Restricted fish cultivation 267 - 270

Control and increase of production in fish cultivation 271 - 272

10. Natural productivity of ponds 273 - 282
11. Biological means of increasing production 283 - 290
12. Maintenance and improvement of ponds 291 - 330
13. Artificial feeding of fish 331 - 352
14. Total productivity and stocking of ponds 353 - 359
15. Enemies and diseases of fish 360 - 383

Harvesting 384

16. Harvesting the fish 384 - 418

Appendix: Lists of principal cultivated fish 420 - 424

Bibliography 425 - 436

India, Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Marketing of fish
1961 in India. Nagpur, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (126): 212 p., 36 plates, tables

→ Economics

Iversen, E.S., Farming the edge of the sea. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 434 p., 142 figs.,
1976 17 tables

Page

General

1. Why farm the sea 13 - 31
2. Seafarming, present and future 32 - 51

Procedures

3. Utilizing productive areas 53 - 84
4. Feeds, feeding and fertilizer 85 - 107
5. Improvement through artificial selection 108 - 121

Presently farmed species

6. Seaweeds 123 - 133
7. Oysters 134 - 157
8. Clams, mussels, scallops, and abalones 158 - 178
9. Shrimps 179 - 201
10. Milkfish, yellowtail, and eels 202 - 214
11. Mullet and miscellaneous pondfishes 215 - 227
12. Other invertebrates for farming 229 - 251
13. Other vertebrates for farming 252 - 281

Problems

14. Disease, predation, and competition 283 - 301
15. Man-made problems 302 - 321

Evaluation

16. Economic aspects of seafarming 323 - 337
17. Some guidelines (research, pitfalls, market, salmon farm in 12 steps) 338 - 348

Checklist (basic questions for advantage and disadvantage of farming) 349 - 359

Glossary 367 - 371

References 372 - 411

Appendixes (Seawater composition, diseases, predators, conversion table for measurings) 412 - 419

Japan Fisheries Association, Fish farming in Japan, 1975. Tokyo, Japan Fisheries Association, 44 p., 1976 18 figs., 17 tables

Pages

1. Development of fisheries and fish farming in Japan 6

1.1 Importance of fish farming in fisheries 6 - 7
1.2 Development of farming 7 - 8
1.3 Development of fish farming 8 - 10

2. Present situation and future of fish farming 11

2.1 Classification of fish farming methods and kinds of fish farmed 11+
2.2 Major construction methods of farms and species farmed 12+
2.3 Present situation and future farming of major fishes and shellfishes 13 - 26

3. Measures taken to promote fish farming 27

3.1 Promotion of farming and space which can be utilized 27 - 29
3.2 Space utilized by fishing farms in coastal areas 29 - 34

4. Present situation of farming and culture technology and future direction of development 35

4.1 On technology of seedings production 38
4.2 On technology of growth control 39
4.3 On feeds 39

Appendix

List of major bodies on fish farming 40 - 44

Japan International Cooperation Agency, Culture of marine life. Textbook for Marine Fisheries Research 1975 Course in Tokai Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 164 p.

Pages

Yasunaga, Y., Larva culture of marine fish 1 - 14
Kurata, H., Culture of the Koruma shrimp 15 - 50
Sagara, J., Abalone culture 51 - 72
Tanaka, Y., Oyster culture techniques 73 - 105

Hamada, S., Bivalve culture 116 - 130
Umebayashi, O., Practical culture of microalgae 131 - 144
Umebayashi, O., Seaweed culture in Japan 145 - 164

Jhingran, V.G., 1977 Fish and fisheries of India. Dehli, India, Hindustan Publishing Corp., 954 p., 83 figs. 233 tables

		Pages
1.	Fishes of India	1
1.1	Definition of fish	1
1.2	History of ichthyology in India	1
1.3	Classification of fishes	2 - 69
1.4	Zoogeography (freshwater and marine fish fauna of India)	69 - 84
2.	Inland fisheries	85
2.1	Estimation of inland catches	85 - 96
2.2	Riverine fisheries	96 - 225
2.3	Fisheries of lakes and reservoirs	225 - 272
2.4	Estuarine fisheries	272 - 349
2.5	Fish culture in fresh waters	350 - 735
2.6	Fish culture in brackish waters	735 - 778
2.7	Sewage-fed fisheries	778 - 790
2.8	Culture of predatory fishes	790 - 800
2.9	Fish culture in rice fields	800 - 803
2.10	Fish in relation to public health	804 - 807
2.11	Fish pathology	807 - 817
3.	Marine fisheries	818
3.1	Oceanography	818 - 824
3.2	Physiography of the Indian Ocean	824 - 827
3.3	Climate in Indian Ocean region	827 - 838
3.4	Primary productivity	838 - 850
3.5	Some biological characteristics of fishes	850 - 851
3.6	Fisheries of the Indian seas (Production and fluctuation in abundance, coastal fisheries, offshore and deep sea fisheries)	851 - 912
3.7	Export of fishery products	912 - 918
3.8	Marine farming	918 - 926

References at the end of each chapter

Indices 927 - 954

Kato, J., 1975 Guide to design and construction of coastal aquaculture pond. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 76 p., figs., tables

	Pages
Introduction	1 - 3
1. Fundamentals of planning, designing and construction	4 - 7
2. Determination of elevation for foundation	8 - 11
3. Design of sluice	12 - 22
4. Specification of management of water quality	23 - 27
5. Design of level	28 - 44
6. Channel and associated facilities	45 - 47
References	48

Appendixes

1.	Fundamentals of tide	51 - 56
2.	Fundamentals of flow of water	56 - 63
3.	Fundamentals of wave motion	67 - 70
4.	Fundamentals of soil	70 - 76

Korringa, P., 1976 Developments in aquaculture and fisheries science. Vol.1. Farming marine organisms low in the food chain. A multidisciplinary approach to edible seaweed, mussel and clam productio Amsterdam, Elsevier, 264 p., 93 figs.

		Pages
1.	"Nori" farming in Japan	17 - 48
2.	Mussel farming in the Netherlands	49 - 102
3.	Mussel farming with bouchots in the Pertuis Breton, France	103 - 128
4.	Mussel farming in Galicia, Spain	129 - 162
5.	Mussel farming in the roads of La Spezia, Italy	163 - 190
6.	Mussel farming on the coast of Istra, Yugoslavia	191 - 205
7.	Mussel farming Russian-style in the Black Sea	207 - 229
8.	Farming the green mussel (Mytilus smaragdinus) in Bacoor Bay, the Philippines	231 - 242
9.	Farming little-neck clams on the Algarvian coast, Portugal	243 - 259
	Index	261 - 264

Bibliography at the end of each chapter

Korringa, P., 1976 Developments in aquaculture and fisheries science. Vol.2. Farming the cupped oysters of the genus Crassostrea. A multidisciplinary treatise. Amsterdam, Elsevier, 244 p., 97 figs.

		Pages
1.	Farming the rock oyster (Crassostrea commercialis) in Australia	3 - 32
2.	Farming the American Atlantic oyster (C. virginica) in Long Island Sound, U.S.A.	33 - 61
3.	Farming the American Atlantic oyster (C. virginica) in Louisiana, U.S.A.	63 - 89
4.	Farming the Portuguese oyster (C. angulata) in the Marennes-Oléron region, Charente Maritime, France	91 - 123
5.	Farming the Portuguese oyster (C. angulata) in the Bay of Arcachon, France	125 - 151
6.	Farming the Pacific oyster (C. gigas) in Hiroshima Bay, Japan	153 - 182
7.	Farming the Pacific oyster (C. gigas) in Willapa Bay, Washington, U.S.A.	183 - 219
	Index	221 - 224

References at the end of each chapter

Korringa, P., 1976 Developments in aquaculture and fisheries science. Vol.3. Farming the flat oysters of the genus Ostrea. A multidisciplinary treatise. Amsterdam, Elsevier, 238 p., 86 figs.

		Pages
1.	Farming the European flat oyster (Ostrea edulis) in the Netherlands with tiles as collectors	5 - 45
2.	Farming the European flat oyster (O. edulis) in the Netherlands with mussel shells as collectors	47 - 72

3. Farming the European flat oyster (O. edulis) in the classical style in Brittany, France 73 - 106
4. Oyster farming in the Morbihan, Brittany, France; variant pattern I 107 - 118
5. Oyster farming in the Morbihan, Brittany, France; variant pattern II 119 - 137
6. Deep water oyster farming in Brittany, France, using plastic collectors 139 - 143
7. Deep water oyster farming in Breton cooperatives, France 145 - 161
8. Farming the European flat oyster (O. edulis) on the coast of Istra, Yugoslavia 163 - 186
9. Farming the European flat oyster (O. edulis) in a Norwegian pool 187 - 204
10. Farming the Olympia oyster (O. lurida) in the State of Washington, U.S.A. 205 - 232

Index 235 - 238

References at the end of each chapter

Korringa, P., 1976 Developments in aquaculture and fisheries science. Vol.4. Farming marine fishes and shrimps. Amsterdam, Elsevier, 208 p., 81 figs.

Pages

1. Mullet farming in Israel 5 - 26
2. "Vallicultura": mullet farming on the Adriatic coast of northern Italy 27 - 64
3. Farming the milkfish (Chanos chanos) in Indonesia 65 - 90
4. Farming penaeid shrimps in Japan 91 - 122
5. Eel farming in Japan 123 - 149
6. Farming the yellow-tail (Seriola quinqueradiata) in Japan 151 - 173
7. Farming the red sea bream (Chrysophrys major) in Japan 175 - 184
8. Farming rainbow-trout and salmon in the marine environment in Norway 185 - 204

Index 205 - 208

References at the end of each chapter

Maar, A., M.A.E. Mortimer and I. van der Lingen, 1974 Fish culture in central East Africa. Rome, FAO, 160 p., 73 figs., tables

Pages

1. Fish culture in Africa 7 - 8
2. Pond construction 11 - 42
3. Fish culture practices in ponds 43 - 78
4. Fish culture practices in dams 79 - 104
5. Predators, diseases and mortalities 105 - 107
6. Economics of fish culture: transport and presentation of fish 108 - 119
7. Background to biological production 123 - 130
8. Structure and general biology of fish 131 - 139

Model record sheet for individual ponds 140

Suggested literature for further information 141

Appendixes

1. Note on fish spoilage and preservation 142
2. Control of bilharzia and malaria in dams and ponds 143 - 144
3. Recording relevant factors prevailing in ponds and dams 145 - 150
4. Useful tables (width and length of ponds, capacity of water flow) 151
5. Items for estimating labor costs in pond construction 152
6. Notes of the economics of fish ponds in Zambia 153
7. Double conversion table (English and international measurements) 155 - 156

Glossary 157 - 158

Index 159 - 160

Miller, J.W., Simon raises fish: a guide to fish culture extension in Africa. Rome, FAO, 47 p., 46 figs. 1977

Originally submitted to the Comité des Pêches Continentales pour l'Afrique, Troisième Session, Burundi, 21-26 novembre 1977. CIFA/77/Inf.6. Août 1977.

1. Controls of place and soil
2. Designing (staking out) the pond
3. Farming in partnership
4. Digging the pond and dike-making
5. How to fill the pond
6. Need of fertilizing and
7. Applying compost
8. Fingerlings for
9. Stocking
10. Quantity of fingerlings (Tilapia nilotica)
11. Feeding and
12. What to use for it
13. Cleaning the pond and its surrounding
14. Feeding for 6 or 7 months
15. Control and time of harvesting
16. Emptying the pond
17. Transfer of the fingerlings in a small pond
18. Use of the harvest for food and market
19. Repairing and cleaning the old pond
20. Refilling the pond with water
21. Restocking the large pond from the small one
22. Warning for predators
23. Better life by fish farming

popular

Milne, P.H., Fish and shellfish farming in coastal waters. London, Fishing News (Books), 208 p., 1972 151 figs., tables

Pages

General

1. Introduction 13 - 16
2. Fish and shellfish farming 17 - 24
3. Legal aspects of seafarming 25 - 27

Preliminary surveys

4. Site selection and analysis 28 - 33
5. Selection of materials (problem of fouling) 34 - 43

Seafarm construction techniques

6.	Design and construction of shore facilities	44 - 66
7.	Intertidal farming techniques (Molluscs, crustaceans, turtles, fish)	67 - 96
8.	Sublitoral farming techniques (Molluscs, crustaceans, fish)	97 - 124
9.	Seabed farming techniques (Molluscs, crustaceans)	125 - 128
10.	Floating cages and rafts (Molluscs, fish)	129 - 146

Problems

11.	Effect of marine enclosures on environment	147 - 158
12.	Control of predators	159 - 161
13.	Marine pollution	162 - 165

The future

14.	Recent advances in materials and techniques	166 - 173
15.	Conclusions	174 - 175

Appendixes

1.	Wind forces and coastal structures	176 - 178
2.	Wave forces and coastal structures	179 - 184
3.	Tide current forces on mesh netting	185 - 187
4.	Mesh design criteria	188
5.	Pile design calculations	189 - 191

References 192 - 200

Glossary 201 - 202

Indices 203 - 208

Misaki International Fisheries Training Center, Overseas Technical Cooperation Agency, Textbook II.
1970 Tokyo, Overseas Technical Cooperation Agency, 67 p., figs., tables

Pillay, T.V.R., ed., Coastal aquaculture in the Indo-Pacific region. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing
1972 News (Books), for IPFC and FAO, 497 p., figs.

		Pages
1.	Regional country reports	1 - 118
2.	Taxonomy and biology of cultivable species	119 - 178
3.	Controlled breeding and seed production	179 - 280
4.	Aquaculture technique: culture of shellfish	281 - 395
5.	Aquaculture technique: culture of fin fish	397 - 454
6.	Pests and predators	455 - 470
7.	Site selection and pond construction	471 - 487
8.	Economics	489 - 492

References at the end of each chapter

Roberts, R.J. and C.J. Shepherd, Handbook of trout and salmon diseases. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing
1974 News (Books), 168 p., 76 figs., 8 tables

——→ Biology

Royce, W.F., Introduction to the fishery sciences. New York and London, Academic Press, 351 p., figs., tables
1972

→ Biology

Russell-Hunter, H.D., Aquatic productivity: an introduction to some basic aspects of biological oceanography and limnology. New York, Macmillan, 306 p.
1970

→ Environment

Sedgwick, S.D., Trout farming handbook. London, Seeley, Service & Co., 157 p., 38 figs., 10 diagrams
1976

		Page
	Introduction	9 - 10
1.	The rainbow trout	11 - 13
2.	Farming rainbow trout in freshwater	14 - 28
3.	Eggs and small trout production	29 - 42
4.	Common diseases	43 - 58
5.	Hygiene	59 - 66
6.	Trout food and feeding	67 - 84
7.	Brood stocks	85 - 94
8.	Economics of rainbow trout farming	95 - 102
9.	Rainbow trout farming in saltwater	103 - 117
10.	Fish for angling	118 - 127
11.	Trout farming equipment	128 - 141
12.	Some common problems (Security, contamination and pollution, predatory birds and animals, grass and weeds)	142 - 146
13.	New ideas (Warmed water, silo production, hormones, re-circulation)	147 - 153
	Index	155 - 157

Shigueno, K., Shrimp culture in Japan. Tokyo, Japan Publications Trading Co., 153 p., 90 black & white figs., 43 tables
1974

		Pages
1.	Brief history of shrimp culture in Japan	3 - 6
2.	Shrimp farming in Japan	7
2.1	Production of fry	7 - 43
2.2	Growing of shrimp in ponds	43 - 72
2.3	Harvest	72 - 76
2.4	Treatment and shipping of the product	76 - 85
2.5	Production cost	85
2.6	Problems incurred in shrimp cultivation	85 - 88
3.	Investigation toward development of new techniques	89
3.1	Preparation of formula feed	89 - 94
3.2	Intensive cultivation experiments	94 - 110
4.	Diseases of shrimp	111
4.1	Microsporidia	111
4.2	Fungi	111 - 112

4.3 Bacteria 112 - 117
4.4 Necrosis of muscle 117 - 118

5. Prospectus of shrimp culture in Asia 119

5.1 Present status of shrimp culture in Asia 119 - 120
5.2 Restocking of shrimp larvae in shrimping grounds in Japan and its significance 120 - 127
5.3 Prospects and problems 127 - 129

Appendixes 131

A. Anatomy of penaeid shrimps 131
B. Species identification 131 - 146

References 147 - 148

Index 149 - 153

potte, S.H., 1970 Fish and invertebrate culture; water management in closed systems. London, Wiley-Interscience, 145 p., 29 figs., 14 tables

Pages

Effects on animals on captive water

1. Biological filtration 3 - 21
2. Mechanical filtration 22 - 39
3. Chemical filtration 40 - 59
4. The carbondioxide system 60 - 72

Effects of captive water on animals

5. Respiration 75 - 83
6. Salts and elements (synthetic seawater) 84 - 101
7. Toxic metabolites 102 - 108
8. Disease prevention by environmental control 109 - 114
9. tests 115 - 119

References 123 - 131

Index 135 - 145

Tesch, F.W., 1977 The eel: biology and management of anguillid eels. English edition edited by P.H. Greenwood. London, Chapman & Hall, 434 p., 128 figs., 42 tables

→ Biology

Tiews, K., ed., 1976 Proceedings of the International Seminar on fisheries resources and their management in Southeast Asia, Berlin, 19 November - 6 December 1974. Organized by the German Foundation for International Development in cooperation with the Federal Research Board of Fisheries and FAO. Bonn, Druckerei Heinz Lammerich, 522 p., figs., tables

→ Economics

Usui, A., 1974 Eel culture (Translated by I. Hayashi, coordinated by G. Williamson). West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 186 p., 115 figs., 19 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	17 - 18
2.	The world's species of (Anguilla) eels	19 - 28
3.	The market demand for eels in Europe	29 - 30
4.	Life history of Japanese eel (A. japonica)	31 - 32
5.	Culture methods - in still-water and in running water	33 - 35
6.	Method and organization of the eel culture industry in Japan	37 - 41
7.	Choosing a site for an eel farm	43 - 44
8.	Eel farm design and construction	45 - 49
9.	Water quality and its control	51 - 54
10.	The feeding of eels	55 - 59
11.	On diseases and parasites - recognition and treatment	61 - 65
12.	Catching, sorting, transporting and killing eels	67 - 71
13.	Month by month management of ponds in the Hamanako area of Japan	73 - 77
14.	How elvers are caught and treated	79 - 82
15.	How to cook eels: Kabajaki, smoked and jellied	83 - 86
16.	Developments in Japan, Europe, America, New Zealand, Australia and in the tropics	87 - 92
17.	Check list of the requirements for starting an eel farm	93 - 95
18.	List of useful books and magazines	97 - 99
19.	The meanings of some Japanese words	101
20.	Status and organization of aquaculture in Japan	103 - 105
21.	Suppliers of feeds and equipment in Japan	107 - 108
	Index	183 - 186

BIOLOGY

Animals and plants of interest in fisheries; fishes and other living resources, their life cycles, behaviour and population dynamics; diseases, parasites and predators; fishery resources and productivity in seawater and freshwater; statistics.

Alekseev, A.P.(ed.), 1971 Fish behaviour and fishing techniques. Proceedings of a conference held in Murmansk on the Kola Peninsula - March 1968. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific Translations, Ltd., 193 p., figs.

	Page
Nikonorov, I.V., Introductory address	1 - 2
Manteifel, B.P., I.V. Nikonorov, D.V. Radakov and A.I. Treshchev, Fish behaviour - main trends and some results of investigations in the U.S.S.R.	3 - 9
Radakov, D.V., Study of fish behavior with a view to achieving productive fishing	10 - 13
Aronov, M.P., A study of fish behavior and underwater research techniques	14 - 17
Kiselev, O.N., Visual observations of fish behavior in natural conditions	18 - 22
Malkyavichus, S., G. Danyulite and A. Samarkin, Behavior of some marine fish in electric fields	23 - 30
Shentyakov, V.A., Prospects of controlling fish behavior by electric fields	31 - 39
Nusenbaum, L.M. et al., Importance of the configuration of the field and the pulse regime for controlling the behavior of fish in electric fields and fishing tactics for diadromous fish using electric barriers	40 - 50
Protasov, V.R., Prospects of utilizing the communicating and orienting signals of fish	51 - 56
Sidel'nikov, I.I. and E.M. Izmest'ev, Peculiarities in the behavior of pacific saury and squid with fishing at night	57 - 61
Pavlov, D.S., The optomotor reaction and fishing	62 - 67
Vyskrebentsev, B.V., Role of reflex stimuli in the behavior of fish near the gear	68 - 72
Martyshevskii, V.N. and V.K. Korotkov, Behavior of some fish in the zone of action of the trawl	73 - 79
Grudtsin, V.P., Investigation into the criteria of fish behavior in dependence on the parameters of the acoustic field	80 - 84
Zusser, S.G., V.N. Chestnoi and O.N. Kiselev, Measurements of underwater illumination in fishery investigations	85 - 90
Solov'ev, Yu., Results of experimental fishing of commercial items at light in the Atlantic	91 - 95
Zaferman, M.L., Some results of stereoscopic photography in underwater investigations	96 - 102
Kuznetsov, Yu.A., The behavior of fish in the zone affected by a curtain of air bubbles	103 - 110
Kharitonova, O.A., Behavior of fattening Okhotsk herring in connection with fishing technology and tactics	111 - 117
Chestnoi, V.N., Daily rhythmicity in trawl catches of fish	118 - 133
Konstantinov, K.G., Diurnal vertical migrations of bottom fish	134 - 145
Zilanov, V.K., The behavior of Atlantic saury and snipefish in an illuminated zone in the North Atlantic Ocean	146 - 157
Malyukina, G.A., The outlook for studying the importance of the sense of smell in the life of fish	158 - 162
Saburenkov, E.N. and D.S. Pavlov, Swimming speeds of fish	163 - 167
Zaferman, M.L. and O.N. Kiselev, Some peculiarities of visual observations from the hydrostat "Sever-1"	168 - 173
Grudtsin, V.P., A method of determining species from biosignals in nature	174 - 178
Radakov, D.V., Some mechanisms of the schooling behavior of fish	179 - 186
Nikonorov, I.V., A.P. Alekseev and K.G. Konstantinov, International FAO Conference on Fish Behaviour in Relation to Fishing Techniques and Tactics	187 - 192
List of abbreviations	193

Bard, J.E. et al., Handbook of tropical fish culture. Nogent-sur-Marne, Centre Technique Forestier
1976 Tropical, 165 p., 126 figs., and tables

→ Aquaculture

Ben-Yami, M., Fishing with light. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, FAO Fishing Manuals,
1976 121 p., 64 figs.

→ Fishing

Bishop, J.E., Limnology of a small Malayan river. The Hague, Dr. W. Junk Publishers, 485 p., 67 figs.,
1973 15 black and coloured plates and 94 tables

→ Environment

Blaxter, J.H.S. and B.B. Parrish, The reaction of marine fish to moving netting and other devices in
1966 tanks. Edinburgh, H.M.S.O., Mar.Res., Edinb., 1966(1):15p., 4 figs., and 7 plates.

	Page
Introduction	3
1. Methods	4 - 5
2. Results (Groundropes and netting devices in daylight and low light intensities; model trawl doors in daylight and low light intensities)	5 - 11
3. Discussion (The reactions to nets in good light conditions; day-night differences)	11 - 14
4. Summary	14
References	14 - 15

University level

Brander, K., Guidelines for collection and compilation of fishery statistics. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.
1975 Tech.Pap., (148):46 p.

	Page
1. Introduction	1
1.1 Management of fisheries requires data	1
1.2 The nature of the fish resource and the methods for studying it	4
1.3 The structure and operation of the fishing industry	12
1.4 The institutional framework for data collection and compilation	15
2. The basic data requirement	17
2.1 The qualities of the data related to their use	17
2.2 Data for stock assessment	19
2.3 Data requirements for study of the fishing industry	27
3. Collecting the data	31
3.1 Organization and costs	33
3.2 Collecting from large scale industrialized fisheries	34

3.3 Collecting from small scale artisanal fisheries 35
3.4 Collecting statistics at the regional and international level 37

4. Processing and publishing the statistics 37

4.1 The qualities of the statistics produced, related to their use 37
4.2 Processing 40

5. Shortcomings in the approach and a forward look 41

6. General bibliography 44

7. References 44

Cushing, D.H., 1968 Fisheries biology, a study in population dynamics. Madison, Wisc., University of Wisconsin Press, 200 p., 82 figs.

		Page
1.	The scope of fisheries biology	3 - 19
2.	Migration (eel, Pacific salmon, North Sea plaice, North Sea herring)	20 - 38
3.	The idea of a unit stock (Arctic cod, North Sea herring)	39 - 60
4.	Measurement of abundance (catch per unit effort, availability, catchability, stock density)	61 - 76
5.	Estimates of natural and fishing mortality	77 - 90
6.	The control of fishing (the yield curve, effect of natural mortality, yield curves and management, stock assessment, natural changes)	91 - 106
7.	Growth problems and fisheries research	107 - 123
8.	Stock recruitment	124 - 142
9.	The oceanic boundaries (Arctic cod and temperature, tuna and current boundaries, herring and upwelling)	143 - 157
10.	The future of fisheries research (migration, stock density, theory)	158 - 169

Appendixes

Symbols	173 - 175
Glossary	176 - 178
References	179 - 188

Index 192 - 200

University level

Cushing, D.H., 1975 Fisheries resources of the sea and their management. London, Oxford University Press, Science and engineering policy series, 87 p. 9 figs., and 2 tables

		Page
1.	The development of fisheries	1 - 10
	1.1 Introduction	
	1.2 The ways in which fishes are caught	
	1.3 Old and new markets for fish	
	1.4 The need for fish	
2.	The natural history of fishes	11 - 21
	2.1 Age, growth, and fecundity of fishes	
	2.2 The migration circuits of fishes	
	2.3 The unity of the stocks	
	2.4 Conclusion	

3. The dynamics of fish populations 22 - 37

3.1 Introduction
3.2 Market sampling and stock density
3.3 The description of fish populations
3.4 The analytic model
3.5 The dependence of recruitment on parent stock
3.6 The present state
3.7 Conclusion

4. The first steps in conservation 38 - 52

4.1 Introduction
4.2 The small plaice problem in ICES
4.3 The Pribilov seals
4.4 The Pacific halibut
4.5 The Int. Council in the 1930s
4.6 The establishment of international conservation

5. The international structure of management 53 - 67

5.1 Introduction
5.2 The Atlantic commissions
5.3 The Pacific commissions
5.4 The int. whaling commission
5.5 The need for management and the new commissions

6. Science and conservation 68 - 82

6.1 The failure in conservation
6.2 The problem of stock and recruitment
6.3 The study of recruitment
6.4 Statistics
6.5 The future of management

Bibliography 83

Index 85 - 87

Duijn, C. van, Jr., Diseases of fishes. London, Iliffe Books, 372 p., and figs. 1973

		Page
1.	Introduction	1 - 6
2.	Skin parasites and infections	7 - 91
3.	Respiration diseases of the gills	92 - 124
4.	Diseases caused by sporozoans	125 - 147
5.	Diseases caused by bacteria and viruses	148 - 211
6.	Diseases of the eye	212 - 225
7.	Diseases of internal organs	226 - 267
8.	Tumours in fish	268 - 290
9.	Miscellaneous complaints	291 - 314
10.	The medicine chest	315 - 354

Index 355 - 372

References at the end of each chapter

Duxbury, A.C., The earth and its oceans. Reading, Maine, Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 381 p. 1971

→ Environment

Edwards, R.W. and D.J. Garrod (eds.), Conservation and productivity of natural waters. London, 1972 Academic Press, 318 p., figs. and tables

→ Environment

FAO, Fisheries in the food economy. Rome, FAO, FAO Basic Stud., (19):79 p., and 8 tables 1968

→ Economics

FAO Department of Fisheries, Atlas of the living resources of the seas. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., 1972 (126) Rev.1: 14 p., and 62 maps

		Page
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Productivity of the seas	1 - 3
3.	Exploitation and utilization	3 - 5
4.	Movements and migrations	5 - 9
5.	Size and distribution	10
6.	Topography and nomenclature	11 - 13
7.	Value of estimates	13 - 14
	List of maps	(V - IX)

FAO, European inland water fish, a multilingual catalogue. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 1972 190 p., 12 colour plates of 25 species of major families

		Page
1.	Introduction	7
2.	Note on the use of the catalogue	11 - 12
3.	Symbol	17 - 18
4.	List of species	19 - 22
5.	References	23
6.	Classification adopted	24
	Index	(19 pages)

FAO, FAO/SIDA Training course on marine pollution in relation to protection of living resources. 1974 Gothenburg 1972. Lectures presented at the First FAO/SIDA training course on marine pollution in relation to protection of living resources. Supplement to the report. Rome, FAO/SIDA/TF 95, Suppl., 327 p., figs.,and tables

→ Pollution

FAO, Fishery Industries Division (ed.), Contributed papers submitted to the expert consultation on
1976 fishing for squid and other cephalopods. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Rep., (170) Suppl.1:150 p., figs., and tables

→ Fishing

Fischer, W. (ed.), FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Fishing area 37, Mediterranean
1973 and Black Sea. Rome, FAO, 2 vols., pag.var.

Vol. 1 Teleostei. Identification sheets - taxonomy, geographic distribution, fisheries, vernacular names
Vol. 2 Elasmobranchii, crustacea, mollusca. Identification sheets - taxonomy, geographic distribution, fisheries, vernacular names. Index of scientific and vernacular names

Fischer, W. and P.J.P. Whitehead (eds.), FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes.
1974 Fishing area 57 and 71, Eastern Indian Ocean and Western Central Pacific. Rome, FAO, 4 vols, pag.var.

Vol. 1 Teleostei. Identification sheets - taxonomy, geographic distribution, fisheries, vernacular names
Vol. 2 Teleostei. Identification sheets - taxonomy, geographic distribution, fisheries, vernacular names
Vol. 3 Teleostei. Identification sheets - taxonomy, geographic distribution, fisheries, vernacular names
Vol. 4 Teleostei. Identification sheets - taxonomy, geographic distribution, fisheries, vernacular names

FAO species identification sheets are a loose-leafed series of cards in ring folders arranged by marine fishing area and are intended for practical use by fieldworkers in fisheries. They provide identification of species of interest and basic data on geographic range and fisheries. Each regional series is kept up to date through the addition of new identification sheets or substitution of obsolete ones.

Gulland, J.A., Manual of methods for fish stock assessment. Part 1. Fish population analysis. Rome,
1969 FAO, FAO Man.Fish.Sci., (4):154 p.

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Mathematics, statistics and sampling	7
2.1	Mathematics	7
2.2	Statistics	21
2.3	Sampling	23
2.4	Exercises	28
3.	Growth	34
3.1	Growth by length and weight	34
3.2	Conversion of length to age	40
3.3	Exercises	41
4.	Effort and catch per unit effort	44
4.1	Introduction	44
4.2	The mathematical formulation	45

4.3 Fishing time 47
4.4 Fishing power 49
4.5 Distribution of fishing 50
4.6 Several gears 53
4.7 Exercises 54

5. Mortalities 58

5.1 Introduction 58
5.2 Estimation of total mortality 59
5.3 Fishing mortality 66
5.4 Natural mortality and growth characters 70
5.5 Special graphical methods 70
5.6 Exercises 72

6. Tagging 75

6.1 Data for mortality rates and population size 75
6.2 Varying distribution in space 78
6.3 Exercises 81

7. Recruitment and selection 84

7.1 Trawl selection 84
7.2 Recruitment 86
7.3 Size limits 88
7.4 Gill net selection 89
7.5 Exercises 93

8. General problems of assessment 99

8.1 The need for stock assessment 99
8.2 The concepts of sustainable yield and potential yield 100
8.3 The unit stock 101

9. The simple yield curve 104

9.1 Derivation of the equation for yield 104
9.2 Other forms of the yield equation 108
9.3 Exercises 113

10. Special assessments 120

10.1 Catch and effort statistics 120
10.2 Schaefer's model 121
10.3 Changes in selectivity 123
10.4 Interacting fisheries 126
10.5 Exercises 128

11. Changes in the parameters 132

11.1 Density-dependent effects 133
11.2 Exercises 134

12. Final exercises 135

Appendixes

Yield tables for $m/K = 0.50$, 1.00 and 1.75 138
Tables of e^{-x} 144

Bibliography 145

Gulland, J.A. (ed 1971) The fish resources of the ocean. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 255 p., different maps and tables. Rev.ed. of FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (97):425 p. (1970)

		Pages
A.	Northwest Atlantic	1 - 13
B.	Northeast Atlantic	14 - 35
C.	Mediterranean and Black Sea	36 - 43
D.	Northwest Pacific	44 - 64
E.	Northeast Pacific	65 - 76
F.	Eastern Central Atlantic	77 - 88
G.	Western Central Atlantic	89 - 96
H.	Indian Ocean	97 - 108
I.	Western Central Pacific	109 - 120
J.	Eastern Central Pacific	121 - 130
K.	Southwest Pacific	131 - 135
L.	Southeast Pacific	136 - 145
M.	Southwest Atlantic	146 - 152
N.	Southeast Atlantic	153 - 161
O.	Antarctic	162 - 168
P.	Oceanic resources	169 - 179
Q.	Mollusca resources	180 - 205
R.	Crustacean resources	206 - 245
S.	Summary	246 - 255

Appendix (table of catches)

References

Each of the chapters A - R is divided under headlines like the following:

1. Topography
2. Hydrography
3. Primary and
4. Secondary production (Zooplancton, Benthos)
5. Fish stocks and fisheries
6. Estimation of potential (stock assessment)
7. Summary and discussion

University level

Gulland, J.A., 1974 The management of marine fisheries. Bristol, Scientechnica (Publishers), 198 p., 9 tables

		Pages
1.	The problem of fishery management	1 - 9
2.	Antarctic whaling	10 - 37
3.	North Atlantic trawl fisheries	38 - 67
4.	The biological basis of management	68 - 104
5.	The objectives of management	105 - 126
6.	The techniques of management	127 - 155
7.	The mechanics of international fishery management	156 - 181
8.	Management of fisheries - The future	182 - 190

Indices 191 - 198

References at the end of each chapter

University level

Gulland, J.A. (ed), Fish population dynamics. London, John Wiley, 372 p., many figs., and tables
1977

		Pages
1.	W.E. Ricker, The historical development	1 - 26
2.	T. Williams, the raw material of population dynamics	27 - 45
3.	R. Jones, Tagging: theoretical methods and practical difficulties	46 - 66
4.	J.A. Gulland, The analysis of data and development of models	67 - 95
5.	B.J. Rothschild, Fishing effort	96 - 115
6.	D.H. Cushing, The problems of stock recruitment	116 - 133
7.	H.A. Regier, Fish communities and aquatic ecosystems	134 - 155
8.	P.A. Larkin, Pacific salmon	156 - 186
9.	M.J. Holden, Elasmobranchs	187 - 215
10.	D.J. Garrod, The North Atlantic cod	216 - 242
11.	R.C.A. Bannister, North Sea plaice	243 - 282
12.	G.J. Murphy, Clupeoids	283 - 308
13.	B.R. Rothschild and A. Suda, Population dynamics of tuna	309 - 334
14.	K.R. Allen and D.G. Chapman, Whales	335 - 358
	Indices	359 - 372

References at the end of each chapter

University level

Harden-Jones, F.R., Fish migration. London, Edward Arnold, 325 p., 86 figs., and tables
1968

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1 - 5
2.	Biological aspects of migrations	6 - 17
3.	Methods of studying	18 - 41
4.	Salmon and trout	42 - 68
5.	The eel	69 - 85
6.	The herring	86 - 143
7.	The cod	144 - 166
8.	The plaice	167 - 181
9.	A recapitulation (homing, migration)	182 - 186
10.	The reactions of fish to stimuli (chemical stimuli, temperature, water currents, light)	187 - 198
11.	Movement without reference to local landmarks	199 - 243
12.	Homing and the use of local landmarks: pilotage	244 - 271
13.	Epilogue	272 - 273
	References	275 - 303
	Indices	304 - 325

Hickling, C.F., Fish culture. London, Faber & Faber, 317 p., five coloured and 86 monochrome pictures
1971 and many tables

→ Aquaculture

Hoar, W.S. and D.J. Randall (eds.), Fish physiology. London, Academic Press, 6 vols.
1969/71

Vol. 1 Excretion, ionic regulation and metabolism. 1969, 465 p.
Vol. 2 The endocrine system. 1969, 447 p.
Vol. 3 Reproduction and growth, bioluminescence, pigments and poisons. 1969, 485 p.
Vol. 4 The nervous system, circulation and respiration. 1970, 532 p.
Vol. 5 Sensory systems and electric organs. 1972, 600 p.
Vol. 6 Environmental relations and behaviour. 1971, 559 p.

University level

Huet, M., Textbook of fish culture, breeding and cultivation of fish. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing
1973 News (Books), 436 p., and figs.

→ Aquaculture

India, Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Preliminary guide to
1951 Indian fish, fisheries, methods of fishing and curing. Nagpur, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (66):137 p. and 66 plates

		Pages
1.	Fishes (anatomy)	1 - 4
2.	Principal groups of fishes and their distribution under each group (also crustaceans and clams and oysters)	4 - 56 57 - 61
3.	Preservation and curing of fish	64 - 67
4.	Manufacture of fish oils, guano, fish meal	67
5.	Manufacture of shark fins and fish maws	68
6.	Fishing vessels	68 - 70
7.	The fishing areas of the Indian Union	70 - 71
8.	Manufacture of nets and other tackle (including lists of the fishing gear used in the different parts of India)	71 - 135
	Glossary (Latin names for fishes)	136
	Bibliography	137

Iversen, E.S., Farming the edge of the sea. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 434 p., 142 figs.,
1976 and 17 tables

→ Aquaculture

Johnston, D.M. (ed.), Marine pollution. London and New York, Academic Press, 729 p., figs. and tables
1976

→ Pollution

Jhingran, V.G., Fish and fisheries of India. Delhi, Hindustan Publishing Corporation, India. 954 p.,
1977 83 figs., and 233 tables

→ Aquaculture

Japan International Cooperation Agency, Fisheries biology and population dynamics of marine resources.
1974 Textbook for Marine Fisheries Research Course in Tokai Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 210 p.

		Pages
1.	Hamabe, M., Characteristic of aquatic resources	1 - 5
2.	Usami, S., Ovarian eggs	6 - 10
3.	Watanabe, T., Eggs and larvae	11 - 19
4.	Kondo, K., Age and growth	20 - 27
5.	Kidachi, T., Zooplancton	28 - 39
6.	Suzuki, H., Feeding habit	40 - 50
7.	Honjo, K., Ecology of fish aggregation	51 - 54
8.	Kawasaki, T., Fisheries resources and their environment	55 - 67
9.	Kawasaki, T., Fluctuation in stock	68 - 75
10.	Kawasaki, T., Procedure of forecasting	76 - 77
11.	Usami, S., Fisheries conditions forecasting of Japanese mackerel	
12.	Kondo, K., Fisheries conditions forecasting of Japanese anchovy	87 - 96
13.	Kawakami, T., Potential exploitation and management of fish resources	97 - 116
14.	Doi, T., Outline of mathematical analysis on fish population for practical use in front	117 - 210

University level

Kainuma, M., A handbook of the poisonous fishes and shellfishes, illustrated in life colour. Tokyo,
1969 Suisan Shokuhin Esei Kyogi-Kai (Japanese text 1-62 p.; English text 63-192)

→ Processing

Korringa P., Development in aquaculture and fisheries science, vols. 1 - 4, Amsterdam, Elsevier
1976

→ Aquaculture

Lagler, K.F., J.E. Bardach and R.R. Miller, Ichthyology: the study of fishes. New York, John Wiley,
1962 545 p., and many figs.

		Pages
1.	Fish, animals and man	1 - 7
2.	The major groups of fishes	8 - 51
3.	Basic fish anatomy	52 - 107
4.	Skin	108 - 133
5.	Foods, digestion, nutrition, and growth	134 - 178
6.	Selection, build, and movement	179 - 204
7.	Blood and circulation	205 - 227
8.	Respiration	228 - 261
9.	Excretion and osmotic regulation	262 - 278
10.	Reproduction	279 - 323
11.	Integration (nervous system, intelligence and behaviour, the senses)	324 - 396
12.	Genetics and evolution	397 - 414
13.	Systematics and nomenclature	415 - 428
14.	Ecology and zoogeography	429 - 475
	Indices	477 - 545

References at the end of each chapter

Lal, K.B., 1969 An introduction to fishing gear technology. New Delhi, Metropolitan Book Co. PVT. Ltd., 229 p. and 45 tables

→ Fishing

Lindberg, G.U., 1974 Fishes of the world: A key to families and a checklist. Israel Program for Scientific Translations Ltd., New York, distributed by John Wiley, 545 p., 985 figs.

		Pages
1.	Systematic list of families	5
2.	Keys (determination of families)	13 - 251
3.	Checklist of families	252 - 361
4.	Bibliography	362 - 510
	Indices of names of families (Latin, western languages, Russian, Chinese and Japanese)	511 - 545

Lowe-McConnell, R.H., 1975 Fish communities in tropical freshwaters. London, Longman, 337 p., 50 figs. and 14 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1 - 11
2.	Freshwater fish faunas of tropical regions and their distributions	12 - 55
3.	Equatorial forest rivers: ecological conditions and fish communities	56 - 89
4.	Seasonal rivers in the tropics: ecological conditions and fish communities	90 - 123
5.	Lacustrine fish communities I The Great Lakes of Eastern Africa	124 - 161
6.	II Some other African lakes	162 - 174
7.	Manmade lakes	175 - 184
8.	The production of tropical freshwater fishes for food	185 - 199
9.	Reactions of fish to conditions in tropical freshwaters	200 - 237
10.	Community development	238 - 268
11.	Conclusions	269 - 271
	Appendixes	
	Some sources of information (Africa, South America, India)	272 - 273
	Fish families represented in tropical freshwaters	274 - 277
	The fish fauna of representative rivers and lakes in Africa	278 - 279
	Fish faunas of Zaire River biotopes	280 - 281
	Air breathing in tropical freshwater fishes	282 - 283
	Bibliography	284 - 303
	Indices	304 - 337

Lythgoe, J. and G., 1971 Fishes of the sea: The coastal waters of the British Isles, Northern Europe and the Mediterranean. London, Blandford Press Ltd., 320 p., sketches, black and white or coloured photographs

		Pages
	Introduction	
1.	The distribution of marine fish	7 - 9
2.	Colour and camouflage	9 - 10

3.	The art of fish photography	10 - 11
4.	The description of fishes	11 - 16
5.	The classification of fishes	16 - 17
6.	The naming of fishes	17
7.	Literature	17 - 18
	Description and habits of fishes	
1.	Class Cyclostomata	19 - 21
2.	Class Chondrichthyes	22 - 51
3.	Class Osteichthyes	52 - 311
	Index	312 - 320

Maar, A., M.A.E. Mortimer and I. van der Lingen, Fish culture in Central East Africa. Rome, FAO, 1974 160 p., 73 figs., and tables

→ Aquaculture

Macan, T.T., Freshwater ecology. London, Longman, 380 p., 65 figs. and 39 tables 1963

		Pages
1.	The background	1 - 10
2.	Physical and chemical properties of water	11 - 14
3.	Communities (in freshwater)	15 - 65
4.	Transport (migration, dispersal, etc.)	66 - 77
5.	Behaviour (of freshwater animals)	78 - 90
6.	Interrelationships (predation, poisons, competition)	91 - 115
7.	Physical factors:	
	(1) water movement, desiccation and miscellaneous	116 - 137
8.	(2) temperature	138 - 174
9.	Oxygen	175 - 206
10.	Salinity (myxohaline waters)	207 - 245
11.	Calcium	246 - 253
12.	Other chemical factors	254 - 266
13.	Production	267 - 275
14.	Methods (to define communities, to discover the structure of community, to find how much is produced)	276 - 285
	References	286 - 322
	Indices	323 - 338

Mackintosh, N.A., The stocks of whales. London, Fishing News (Books), 323 p., 25 figs. in the text 1965 and 47 photographs on 20 plates

		Pages
1.	Introduction	13 - 23
2.	Species and attributes of whales	24 - 42
3.	The seasonal cycle:	
	(1) migrations and feeding	43 - 68
4.	(2) breeding	69 - 80
5.	Distribution and segregations of the populations	81 - 97
6.	Population structure	98 - 121
7.	The production of whales	122 - 136
8.	The whaling industry and its regulation	137 - 159

9.	Taxation and status of the separate species	160 - 183
10.	Stock analysis	184 - 202
	References	203 - 220
	Index	221 - 232

University level

Marshall, N.B., 1971 Explorations in the life of fishes. Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 204 p., and 54 figs.

		Pages
1.	The success of teleostean fishes	1 - 21
2.	Features of dynamic design	22 - 34
3.	The life of deep-sea fishes	35 - 87
4.	Life and pressure in the deep sea	88 - 99
5.	Aspects of convergent evolution	100 - 131
	Some adaptive types of fishes	132 - 152
	General considerations	152 - 172
	References	173 - 185
	Index	187 - 204

Nair, R.V., 1973 Indian sardines, their biology and fishery. New Delhi, CSIR Information Directorate, Zool.Monogr.Counc.Sci.Ind.Res., India, (2):107 p., 24 figs., and 23 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction (taxonomy, synopsis of species)	1 - 3
2.	Biology of the oil sardine (fishery and utilization)	4 - 39
3.	Biology of the lesser sardines	39 - 84
4.	Fishery of the lesser sardines (fishing craft and gear)	84 - 90
	References	91 - 97
	Indices	99 - 107

Nakamura, H., 1969 Tuna, distribution and migration. London, Fishing News (Books), 76 p., 23 figs. and 6 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	5 - 7
2.	Species segregation	8 - 15
3.	Ecological or size segregation	16
3.1	Yellowfin tuna in Pacific Ocean	16 - 20
3.2	Bigeye tuna in Pacific Ocean	20 - 27
3.3	Albacore in Pacific Ocean	27 - 31
3.4	Bluefin tuna in the North Pacific Ocean	31 - 36
3.5	Southern bluefin tuna in the Indo-Pacific Ocean	36 - 43
4.	Migration	44 - 45
4.1	Migration within a habitat	45 - 51
4.2	Migration between habitats	52 - 58

5.	Examination of hypothesis	59
5.1	Location of discontinuous ocean structure	59 - 60
5.2	Fishing grounds in the South Atlantic Ocean	60 - 61
5.3	Distribution of fish contaminated by radioactivity	62 - 65
6.	Summary	66 - 68
7.	Literature cited	69 - 76

Nikolsky, G.V., 1963 Ecology of fishes. London and New York, Academic Press, 352 p., 140 figs., and 25 tables

		Pages
	Inter-relationships between fishes and their abiotic and biotic environment	3 - 142
1.	Adaptation of fishes to abiotic environmental factors	5
1.1	Density and pressure of the water	5 - 14
1.2	Salinity of the water	14 - 16
1.3	Temperature of the water	17 - 25
1.4	Salt content of the water	25 - 32
1.5	Gases in solution	32 - 43
1.6	Light, sound, other vibrations and forms of radiant energy	43 - 62
1.7	Bottom deposits and particles suspended in the water	62 - 68
1.8	Movement of the water and modes of movement in the fishes	68 - 82
2.	Biotic inter-relationships among fishes	82 - 84
2.1	Intraspecific relationships among fishes	84 - 94
2.2	Interspecific inter-relationships	94 - 108
2.3	Interspecific relationships between fishes and other organisms (bacteria, viruses, plants, fishes and other animals)	108 - 142
	Fundamental links in the life cycles of fishes	145 - 287
1.	Reproduction and development of fishes	147 - 187
2.	The size, growth and age of fishes	167 - 225
3.	Population dynamicy of fishes	225 - 230
4.	The migration of fishes (for spawning, feeding, overwintering)	230 - 258
5.	The overwintering and hibernation of fishes	258 - 262
6.	Feeding and the feeding relationships among fishes	262 - 287
	The significance of fishes in the life of mankind and the biological basis of a rational fishery	291 - 313
	Bibliography	315 - 328
	Index	329 - 352

Pillay, T.V.R. (ed.), 1972 Coastal aquaculture in the Indo-Pacific region. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books) Ltd., for IPFC and FAO, 497 p. and many figs.

→ Aquaculture

Pope, J.A. et al., Manual of methods for fish stock assessment. Part 3. Selectivity of fishing gear.
1975 Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (41) Rev.1: 65 p.

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
1.1	Selection by the fishing gear	1
1.2	Size selection within gear	2
1.3	Scope of this manual	2
2.	Size selection	3
2.1	Mesh selection	3
2.2	Hook selection	6
3.	Experimental methods	7
3.1	General considerations	7
3.2	The covered cod-end method	9
3.3	The alternate haul method	14
3.4	Variants of the alternate haul method	15
3.5	Comparison of methods	16
3.6	Gillnets	17
3.7	Hooks	18
3.8	Mesh measurement	18
3.9	Fish measurement	21
4.	Processing data	23
4.1	Methods of fitting selection curves	23
4.2	Comparison of methods of fitting selection curve	28
4.3	Assessing estimates	29
4.4	Combining estimates	29
4.5	Comparison of selection factors	31
4.6	Calculation of gillnet and hook selectivity	31
5.	Factors other than mesh and hook size affecting size selection	35
5.1	Cod-end selection	35
5.2	Gillnet selection	36
5.3	Hook selection	37
6.	Presentation of results	38
7.	Glossary of terms	40
8.	Bibliography	41
Tables		47
Figures		53

Raymont, J.F.G., Plankton and productivity in oceans. Oxford, Pergamon Press, 660 p., figures and
1963 tables

		Pages
1.	The aquatic environment, temperature	1 - 22
2.	Gases of biological importance in the oceans	23 - 39
3.	Salinity	40 - 57
4.	Mixing processes with the oceans	58 - 92
5.	The phytoplankton	93 - 128
6.	Production, plant plankton and seaweeds	129 - 146

7.	Factors affecting primary production: I Nutrients	147 - 188
8.	II Light and temperature	189 - 228
9.	III Organic micro-nutrients and inhibitors	229 - 238
10.	IV Grazing	239 - 268
11.	The seasonal succession in phytoplankton	270 - 278
12.	Zooplankton: I General account, the neritic plankton	279 - 317
13.	II Oceanic zooplankton, geographical distribution	318 - 370
14.	Seasonal changes and breeding of zooplankton	371 - 417
15.	Vertical distribution and migration of zooplankton	418 - 466
16.	Bacteria of the sea and regeneration processes	467 - 500
17.	Feeding and respiration of the zooplankton	501 - 541
18.	Food cycles; bottom fauna and nekton	542 - 614
	References	615 - 650
	Index	651 - 660

University level

Rheinheimer, G., 1974 Aquatic microbiology. London, John Wiley and Sons, 184 p., and 42 figs.

Ribelin, W.E. and G. Migaki (eds.), 1975 The pathology of fishes. Madison, Wisc., University of Wisconsin Press, 1004 p., and figures
(Results of a symposium of fish pathology 1960)

		Pages
	Comparative fish histology	3 - 30
1.	Specific diseases	31 - 271
2.	Diseases of a species: Channel catfish	273 - 302
3.	Lesions of organ systems	303 - 460
4.	Chemical and physical aspects of disease	461 - 718
5.	Nutritional disease	719 - 802
6.	Neoplasia	803 - 981
	Discussion of tumour papers	983 - 987
	Indices	989 - 1004

References and discussions at the end of each chapter

University level

Ricker, W.E., 1975 Computation and interpretation of biological statistics of fish populations. Ottawa, Department of the environment, fisheries and marine services, Bull.Fish.Res.Board Can., (191):382 p.

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Estimation of survival rate and mortality rate from age composition	29
3.	Vital statistics from marking: single season experiments	75
4.	Population statistics from marking experiments extending through two or more time intervals, with constant survival rate	105
5.	Population statistics from marking experiments extending through two or more time intervals, with variable survival rate	123

6. Estimation of survival and rate of fishing from the relation of fishing success to catch or effort 149
7. Estimation of survival and rate of fishing from catch and fishing effort in successive years 163
8. Estimation of stock and mortality from statistics of the catch and its qualitative composition 181
9. Growth in length and in weight 203
10. Computation of yield from a given recruitment 235
11. Recruitment and stock-recruitment relationships 265
12. Recruitment and the fishery 297
13. Direct estimation of the relation of equilibrium yield to size of stock and rate of fishing 309

Appendixes

I Table of exponential functions and derivatives 335
II Confidence limits for variables (x) distributed in a poisson frequency distribution, for confidence coefficients (= 1 - P) of 0.95 and 0.99 343
III Characteristics and relationships for two types of recruitment curve 345
IV Regression lines 351

References 353

Index 367

Ricker, W.E. (ed.), Methods for assessment of fish production in fresh waters. Oxford, Blackwell 1971 Scientific Publications, IBP Handb., (3):348 p.

Pages

1. Introduction: W.E. Ricker 1
2. Capture, sampling and examination of fishes: Karl F. Lagler 7
3. Identification of freshwater fishes: R.H.Lowe-McConnell 45
4. Marking and tagging: Brian Stott 82
5. Age and growth: E.W. Tesch 98
6. Estimation of population number and mortality rates: D.S. Robson and H.A. Regier 131
7. Eggs and early life history: T.B. Bagenal and Erich Braum 166
8. Production: D.W. Chapman 199
9. Food analysis and rate of digestion: J.T. Windell 215
10. Estimation of food consumption rates: G.E. Davis and C.E. Warren 227
11. Causes of mortality: John E. Paling 249
12. Appraisal of a fishery: J.A. Gulland 259
13. The experimental approach: Tadeusz Backiel 270

Appendixes

1. List of Symbols 279
2. Scientific names of fishes mentioned in the text 283
3. Tables of equivalent values 286
4. Tables of exponentials from e^{-3} to e^{3} 290

General references 295

Index 341

Roberts, R.J. and C.J. Shepherd, Handbook of trout and salmon diseases. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing
1974 News (Books), 168 p., 76 figs. and tables

		Pages
1.	The cultured salmonids	17 - 21
2.	The anatomy of salmonid fish	22 - 33
3.	Husbandry and salmonid fish (biological requirements, cycle of farming operations, fish farming systems)	34 - 42
4.	Infectious disease	43 - 75
5.	Disease diagnosis on the farm	76 - 80
6.	Diseases of eggs and sac-fry	81 - 86
7.	Diseases of early feeding	87 - 93
8.	Diseases of growers	94 - 116
9.	Diseases of marine culture	117 - 122
10.	Nutritional diseases	123 - 128
11.	Fish kills (sudden mass mortality)	129 - 130
12.	Diseases of wild fish and brood-stock	131 - 143
13.	Prevention and treatment of disease	144 - 159
	Appendix (use of microscope)	160 - 163
	References	163
	Drugs and chemicals	164
	Index	165 - 168

Robson, T.O., The control of aquatic weeds. Agric.Bull.Minist.Agric.Fish.Food G.B., (194):68 p.
1973

		Pages
1.	The principles of water weed control in Britain	2 - 8
2.	Authorities responsible for land drainage and relevant legislation	9 - 10
3.	Methods of control	10
	3.1 Cutting and dredging	10 - 14
	3.2 Burning	14
	3.3 Biological control methods	14 - 15
	3.4 Herbicides	15 - 37
4.	Table of herbicide recommendation	38 - 39
	Appendices	
	Code of practice for the use of herbicides on weeds in watercourse and lakes	40 - 50
	Conversion tables of measurements and abbreviations	51 - 52
	Index	53 - 54

Royce, W.F., Introduction to the fishery sciences. New York and London, Academic Press, 351 p., figs.
1972 and tables

		Pages
1.	The challenge to fishery scientists	1 - 11
2.	The aquatic environment	12 - 63
3.	Food chain and resource organisms	64 - 108
4.	Biology of aquatic resource organisms	109 - 163
5.	Basic ecology	164 - 194

6.	Analysis of exploited populations	195 - 253
7.	Aquacultural science	254 - 276
8.	Fisheries and their methods	277 - 313
9.	Fishery resource management	314 - 343
	Index	344 - 351

References at the end of each chapter

University level

Ruivo, M. (ed.), Marine pollution and sea life. West Byfleet, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 624 p., figs. and tables
1972

→ Pollution

Russell-Hunter, H.D., Aquatic productivity: an introduction to some basic aspects of biological oceanography and limnology. New York, Macmillan, 306 p.
1970

→ Environment

Saville, A., Survey methods of appraising fishery resources, Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (171):76 p.
1977

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
	1.1 Survey objectives	1
	1.2 Organization of this Manual	1
	References	3
2.	Exploratory fishing surveys	4
	2.1 Exploratory fishing surveys and related types of surveys	4
	2.2 Defining the survey objectives	4
	2.3 Area and timing of the survey	6
	2.4 Precision and accuracy of the survey estimate	6
	2.5 Confidence limits of the survey estimate	7
	2.6 Stratified sampling	10
	2.7 Sampling gear and methods	13
	2.8 Sampling the catch	17
	2.9 Cruise programme and report	18
	References	19
3.	Acoustic surveys	20
	3.1 Characteristics of acoustic systems	20
	3.2 Some basic principles	21
	3.3 Methods of abundance estimation	23
	3.4 Sampling considerations	29
	References	35

4. Indirect methods for forecasting fisheries potentials 39

4.1 Primary productivity 39
4.2 Zooplankton abundance 42
4.3 Egg and larval surveys 43
4.4 Examination of stomach contents of higher trophic forms 47

References 48

5. Data collection and recording 50

5.1 Data selection 50
5.2 Data records 50
5.3 Survey identification and description 51
5.4 Station identification and recording observations 53
5.5 Catch information 56
5.6 Recording length compositions 56
5.7 Biological data 60
5.8 Recording acoustic data 61

References 64

6. Data analysis and reporting 65

6.1 Species available and their seasonal spatial distribution 65
6.2 Estimation of potential commercial catch rates 66
6.3 Standing stock size 68
6.4 Estimation of potential yield 69
6.5 Presentation of results 72

References 73

7. Conclusions and general considerations on choice of survey methods 74

Schlieper, C. (ed.), Research methods in marine biology. London, Sidgwick & Jackson, 372 p., 111 figs. and 19 tables
1972

Pages

1. Hydrographic methods

1.1 Grasshoff, K., Chemical methods 1 - 25
1.2 Siedler, G., Physical methods 26 - 45

2. Analysis of the stock

2.1 Lenz, J., Plankton 46 - 63
2.2 Kändler, R., Nekton 64 - 88
2.3 Schwenke, H., Benthonic vegetation 89 - 103
2.4 Schwenke, H., Bottom living animals (Macrobenthos, Meiobenthos, Protozoa) 104 - 141
2.5 Höhnk, W., Fungi 142 - 155
2.6 Gunkel W. and G. Rheinheimer, Bacteria 156 - 175

3. Underwater observation and photography (H. Schwenke) 176 - 191

4. Conservation and culture in the laboratory

4.1 Algae 192 - 215
4.2 Animals 216 - 247
4.3 Microorganisms (Protozoa, Fungi, Bacteria) 248 - 289

5. Biological study methods

5.1 Lenz, J., Plankton 290 - 307

6. Ecological physiology study methods

6.1 Gessner, F., Plants 308 - 329
6.2 Schlieper, C., Animals 330 - 346

Index 347 - 356

University level

Sedgwick, S.D., 1973 Trout farming handbook. London, Seeley, Service & Co., 157 p., 38 figs. and 10 diagrams

→ Aquaculture

Shigueno, K., 1974 Shrimp culture in Japan. Tokyo, Japan Publications Trading Co., 153 p., 90 black and white figs., 43 tables

→ Aquaculture

Sindermann, C.J., 1970 The principal diseases of marine fish and shellfish. New York and London, Academic Press, 369 p., 61 figs.

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1 - 7
2.	Diseases of marine fishes	8 - 105
3.	Diseases of marine shellfish	106 - 202
4.	Mortalities of marine animals, with emphasis on the role of disease (mass mortality of North American clupeid and shellfish)	203 - 226
5.	Disease and parasitic problems in marine aquaria and cultivated populations	227 - 257
6.	International defense mechanisms in marine animals	258 - 289
7.	Relation of human diseases to diseases of marine animals	290 - 308
8.	Assessment of the role of disease in marine populations	309 - 328
9.	Future studies of disease in the marine environment	329 - 331

Indices 333 - 369

References at the end of each chapter

Smith, J.L.B., 1965 The sea fishes of southern Africa. Published for The Trustees of the Sea Fishes of Southern Africa Book Fund. Cape Town, Central News Agency, 580 p., 1 232 figs. and 111 mostly coloured plates

Standard work of all classes of marine fishes of southern Africa from Angola to Mozambique and Madagascar. The author was privileged to announce the discovery of a living coelacanth fish in 1939.

Spotte, S.H., 1970 Fish and invertebrate culture; water management in closed systems. London, Wiley-Interscience, 145 p., 29 figs. and 14 tables

→ Aquaculture

Tesch, F.W., 1977 The eel: biology and management of anguillid eels. English edition edited by P.H. Greenwood. London, Chapman & Hall, 434 p., 128 figs. and 42 tables

		Pages
1.	Body structure and functions	1
1.1	Skeleton	1 - 9
1.2	Skin and musculature	9 - 22
1.3	Respiratory organs and swimbladder	23 - 28
1.4	Feeding and organs of digestion	28 - 35
1.5	Circulation of the blood	35 - 41
1.6	Urinogenital system	41 - 58
1.7	The endocryne system	58 - 66
1.8	Nervous system and sense organs	66 - 80
2.	Eel species, their development stages and their distribution	81 - 83
2.1	The European and American eels: A. anguilla and A. rostrata	83 - 110
2.2	Indo-Pacific species	110 - 129
2.3	Zoogeographical relationships	129 - 132
3.	Post-larval ecology and behaviour	133
3.1	The glass eel and elvers: their migration on the Continental Shelf and into freshwaters	133 - 153
3.2	Migration of pigmented young eels	154 - 169
3.3	The "yellow eel" stage to the "silver eel" stage	169 - 220
3.4	Silver eel migration	220 - 240
4.	Fishing yields	241
4.1	The development of eel fisheries	241 - 244
4.2	Ánnual and regional fluctuations in yield	244 - 249
4.3	Variation in catch size throughout the year	249 - 252
4.4	Population density and catch sizes from an economic and ecological viewpoint	252 - 271
5.	Fishing methods	272 - 273
5.1	Eel traps	273 - 285
5.2	Stow nets	285 - 292
5.3	Permanent eel traps	292 - 300
5.4	Seines and trawls	300 - 304
5.5	Angling and line fishing	304 - 315
5.6	Lift nets, spears and other equipment	315 - 318
5.7	The use of electricity	318 - 322
5.8	Combination with light	322 - 327
6.	Eel culture and life storage	328 - 329
6.1	Eel farming in Japan	329 - 335
6.2	Experiments on eel farming in Europe	335 - 340
6.3	Live storage	340 - 341
7.	Diseases, parasites and live storage	342
7.1	Virus and bacterial diseases	342 - 351
7.2	Infestation by fungi, protozoa and metazoa	351 - 356

7.3	Teratological and other defects	356 - 361
8.	Trade and processing	362
8.1	International trade	362 - 363
8.2	Prices	364 - 366
8.3	Quality	366 - 368
	References	371 - 422
	Index	423 - 434

Tiews, K. (ed.), Proceedings of the international seminar on fisheries resources and their management
1976 in Southeast Asia. Berlin, 19 November - 6 December 1974, organized by the German Foundation for International Development in cooperation with the Federal Research Boards of Fisheries and FAO. Bonn, Druckerei Heinz Lammerick, 522 p., fig. and tables

→ Economics

Usui, A., Eel culture. (Translated by I. Hayashi, coordinated by G. Williamson). West Byfleet, Surrey,
1974 Fishing News (Books), 186 p., 115 figs. and 19 tables

→ Aquaculture

Whitton, B.A., River ecology. Oxford, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Stud.Ecol., (2):756 p.,
1975 149 figs.

→ Environment

Wickstead, J.H., Marine zooplankton. London, Edward Arnold (Publishers), 80 p., fig.
1976

		Pages
1.	History of zooplankton research	1 - 5
2.	The environment of the zooplankton	6 - 18
3.	Zoological composition (temporary and permanent plankton: day and night variation; seasonal variation; spatial variation and the concept of indicator species; zooplankton communities; giant larvae)	19 - 28
4.	Zoo plankton in the ecology of the oceans	29 - 32
5.	How much and how many (collecting; fixing and preserving; analysis of samples; the possibilities of laser holography)	33 - 42
6.	Adaptation of environment	43 - 54
7.	Zooplankton as food for man (nutritional value; the practical aspects)	55 - 59
	References	60

University level

Willoughby, L.G., Freshwater biology. London, Hutchinson, 167 p., figs. and plates
1976

		Pages
1.	The physical and chemical background	9 - 16
2.	Photosynthetic plants	17 - 45
3.	Invertebrate animals	46 - 60
4.	Fish biology	61 - 92
5.	Streams and rivers	93 - 103
6.	Decomposition cycles and nutrient re-circulation	104 - 131
7.	Lakes, reservoirs and water supplies	132 - 136
8.	Sewage and industrial waste disposal	137 - 141
9.	Pollution phenomena	142 - 148
10.	Sedimentary record	149 - 157
11.	The way ahead (mosquito control; fish farming; reservoir biology)	158 - 162
	Index	163 - 167

Zeitschel, B. and S.A. Gerlach (eds.), The biology of the Indian Ocean: proceedings of a Symposium
1973 held at the University of Kiel from 31 March to 6 April 1971. Berlin, Springer Verlag, Ecol.Stud., (3):549 p., 296 figs.

→ Environment

ECONOMICS

Policy and planning, economic aspects of fishery management, commercial operations including cost and earnings investigations, institutional aspects including industry and fishermen's associations, credit, insurance, etc.

Bard, J. et al., Handbook of tropical fish culture. Nogent-sur-Marne, Centre Technique Forestier
1976 Tropical, 165 p., 126 figs., tables

⟶ Aquaculture

Campleman, G., Manual on the identification and preparation of fishery investment projects. Rome, FAO,
1976 FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (149):86 p., 1 fig., tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
1.1	Purpose of the manual	1 - 2
1.2	Projects and project appraisal	2
1.3	Special characteristics of fisheries industries	2 - 7
1.4	The special features of fisheries projects	7 - 8
2.	Project identification and formulation	9
2.1	Fishery planning and fishery projects	9 - 10
2.2	Stages in project formulation and analysis	10 - 11
2.3	Project identification and prefeasibility studies	11 - 13
2.4	Project identification and selection	13 - 16
2.5	Selection	16 - 18
2.6	Presentation	18 - 19
3.	Project formulation	20
3.1	Project design	20 - 24
3.2	Project analysis	24 - 26
3.3	Economic analysis (social analysis)	26 - 31
3.4	The national economic effect of the project	31 - 32
3.5	Pre-project costs	32 - 33
3.6	Financing and management aspects of the project	33 - 34
3.7	Conclusions and recommendations	34
3.8	Project appraisal (project review)	35
4.	Measures of worth and other indicators	36
4.1	Simple indicators	36 - 37
4.2	The main discounting techniques	37 - 45
4.3	Approximate methods	45 - 46
4.4	Other uses of discounting methods	47
4.5	Risk and uncertainty	47 - 51
5.	Conclusion and guidelines	52
5.1	Assistance in project preparation	52
5.2	The guidelines	52
5.3	Presentation of the report	53 - 54

Annex

A. Guidelines for preparation and analysis of fish production and marketing projects 55 - 57
B. Guidelines for preparation and analysis of fishery harbour and basic infrastructural projects 58 - 59

Appendixes

1. Typical questionnaire for fisheries sector review 60 - 64
2. Pro-forma: vessel costs and earnings statement 65
3. Criteria for appraisal and review of fisheries projects 66 - 69
4. Compounding and discount tables for project evaluation 70 - 84

References 85 - 86

University level

Christy, F.T.Jr., 1973 Alternative arrangements for marine fisheries: an overview. Resources for the Future, RFF/PISFA Pap., (1):91 p., 2 figs. Washington, D.C.,

Pages

1. Fundamental characteristics of fisheries 1 - 2

1.1 Migratory behaviour 2 - 9
1.2 Maximum sustainable yields from wild stocks 9 - 12
1.3 Interrelationships in fisheries 12 - 14
1.4 Economic consequences of common property 14 - 16
1.5 Examples of economic waste 16 - 19
1.6 Confusion between production and distribution 19 - 21
1.7 Summary 21

2. Alternatives for management 22

2.1 Management goals 22 - 29
2.2 Alternative regulatory techniques 29 - 40
2.3 Summary 40 - 43

3. Alternative techniques for distribution of wealth 44

3.1 Introduction 44 - 49
3.2 Wealth distribution techniques 49 - 60
3.3 Summary and conclusions 60 - 61

4. Alternative institutions for management and distribution 62

4.1 Provision of data and information 62 - 69
4.2 Regulatory action 69 - 76
4.3 Enforcement of regulation 76 - 81
4.4 Dispute settlement 81 - 83

5. General principles for fisheries arrangements 84

5.1 Introduction 84 - 85
5.2 General principles 85 - 90
5.3 Summary 90 - 91

University level

Cushing, D.H., Fisheries resources of the sea and their management. London, Oxford University Press, 1975 Science and engineering fishery series, 87 p., 9 figs., 2 tables

→ Biology

Dupuy, R.-J., The law of the sea; current problems. Dobbs Ferry, N.Y., Oceana Publications, 210 p. 1974

→ Legislation

FAO, Fishery Economics and Institutions Division and Fishery Industries Division (eds.), Fishing ports 1970 and markets. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 396 p., figs., tables

→ Processing

FAO, Fisheries in the food economy. Rome, FAO, FAO Basic Stud., (19):79 p., 8 tables 1968

		Pages
1.	The place of fisheries in the world economy and in nutrition	1 - 6
2.	Trends in fish production and utilization	7 - 15
3.	Fishery commodities: production and trade	16 - 20
3.1	The fish-freezing industry	20 - 24
3.2	The fish-curing industry	24 - 28
3.3	The fish-canning industry	28 - 31
3.4	The fish reduction industry	31 - 33
3.5	Processing at sea	34 - 35
3.6	Ancillary facilities	35 - 36
4.	Factors influencing the future supply of fishery resources and products	37
4.1	Fishery resources development	37 - 41
4.2	Technological progress in the fishing sector	41 - 44
4.3	Technological progress in handling, processing and marketing	44 - 49
4.4	Changes in industry structure and increased efficiency and economy in distribution	49 - 50
4.5	Marketing and distribution facilities	50 - 51
5.	Factors influencing present and future demand for fish and fishery products	52
5.1	Demand for products for human consumption	52 - 55
5.2	Demand for products used for industrial purposes	55 - 57
5.3	Projections of the demand for food fish	57 - 63
5.4	Future markets for fishery products	63 - 67
6.	Increasing supply, availability and promoting consumption	68 - 71
7.	Summary and conclusions	72 - 77
	Bibliography	78 - 79

FAO, 1971 Manual on fishermen's cooperatives. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Stud., (13):124 p.

		Pages
1.	Formation and structure of a cooperative	1
	Formation of the cooperative	1
	Structure of the cooperative	3
2.	The manager and his functions	8
	Selection and training of the manager	8
	Powers of the manager	10
3.	Management and training of personnel	13
	Management of personnel	13
	Training of personnel	14
4.	Financial services and capital structure	16
	Financial services	16
	Capital structure	19
5.	Cooperative education	24
6.	Marketing cooperatives	27
	Organization	27
	Marketing	32
7.	Supply cooperatives	34
	Some general operational problems of supply cooperatives	34
	Some specific problems of supply cooperatives	35
Appendixes		
1.	Prince Rupert Fishermen's Cooperative Association, British Columbia, Canada	41
2.	Tungkang Fishermen's Association, China (Taiwan)	67
3.	Satpati Fishermen's Sarvodaya Cooperative Society Limited, Maharashtra State, India	85
4.	Caribeña Producers' Cooperative Society Limited, Belize, British Honduras	111
Selected bibliography		119

Firth, R., 1966 Malay fishermen: their present economy. London, Routledge & Kegan Paul, International Library of Sociology and Social Construction, 354 p., 18 tables, 27 figs. in the text, 2nd rev. ed.

		Pages
1.	The fishing industry of Malaya and Indonesia	1 - 27
2.	Economics of the industry in two Malay states (Kelantan and Trengganu)	28 - 62
3.	Structure of a sample fishing community	63 - 81
4.	Planning and organization of fishing activities	82 - 125
5.	Ownership of equipment and management of capital	126 - 161
6.	The credit system in financing production	162 - 184
7.	Marketing organization	185 - 234
8.	The system of distributing earnings	235 - 257
9.	Output and levels of income	258 - 281
10.	Fishermen in the general peasant economy	282 - 297
11.	Fisheries development and the Malay peasant economy	298 - 306

Appendixes

A. Note on problems and technique in a field study of a peasant economy 307 - 317
B. Summary of boats and fishing equipment in Malayan waters, 1938/39 318 - 319
C. Summary of fishing boats and nets in Kelantan and Trengganu about 1939 320 - 321
D. Variation in the scheme of distribution in the major forms of fishing 322 - 332
E. The Daganay-system in Trengganu and North Pehang 333 - 338
F. Weekly records of sales of fish from liftnets, Perupok area, during a half year 339
G. Sales of fish from Putrat Dalam (Mackerel-nets), Perupok area, during half a year 340
H. Commoner types of fish taken in east coast Malayan waters (fishing gear) 341 - 343
I. Glossary of Kelantan terms associated with fishing 344 - 347

Bibliography 348

Index 349 - 354

University level

Forrest, D.M., Eel capture, culture, processing and marketing. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 1976 203 p., 66 photographs, 24 figs., 49 tables

→ Aquaculture

Fyson, J.F., Construction of a 16-metre ferro-cement fishing boat. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., 1970 (95):53 p., 58 figs., 7 drawings, tables

→ Fishing vessels

Gulbrandsen, Ø., Fishing boat designs: 2 V-bottom boats. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (134):46 p., 1974 24 plates, tables

→ Fishing vessels

India, Ministry of Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Marketing of fish in India. 1961 Nagpur, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (126):212 p., 36 plates, tables

Pages

1. Types of fishes 1 - 12

2. Fishing gear and methods of fishing 13

2.1 Fishing vessels 13 - 17
2.2 Fishing implements 17 - 18
2.3 Note on the manufacture of nets and other fishing tackle 18 - 20
2.4 Fishing with powerboats 20 - 25

3.	Supply	26
3.1	World production	26
3.2	Indian supplies, annual landings	36 - 37
3.3	Imports to India	37 - 41
3.4	Exports from India	41 - 45
3.5	Re-exports of fish-products	45
3.6	Total value of imports and exports	45
4.	Preparation for the market	46
4.1	General	46 - 47
4.2	Methods employed regarding catching, collecting, gutting and cleaning	47 - 48
4.3	Preservation and curing of fish	48 - 58
4.4	Issue of salt for fish-curing	58 - 59
4.5	Note on number, location and size of fish-curing yards	60 - 61
4.6	Note on the manufacture of fish oils	61 - 65
4.7	Note on the manufacture of shark-fins and fish maws	65 - 66
4.8	Cost of preparation for the market	66 - 67
5.	Demand and utilization	68
5.1	Demand	68 - 71
5.2	Utilization	71 - 77
5.3	Seasonal variations in demand	77 - 79
6.	Prices	80
6.1	General	80
6.2	Units of sale and basis of price quotations	80 - 84
6.3	Wholesale prices of important varieties of the chief producing countries	84
6.4	Factors effecting fish prices	84 - 90
6.5	Seasonal variations in prices	90 - 92
6.6	Note on retail prices	92
6.7	Trend of fish prices	92 - 95
6.8	Note on prices of fish and fish by-products	95
6.9	Market intelligence	95 - 96
7.	Assembling, storage, transportation and distribution	97
7.1	General background	97 - 98
7.2	Fishing population	98 - 102
7.3	Methods and agencies of assembling	102 - 107
7.4	Fish markets	108 - 111
7.5	Storage	111 - 112
7.6	Transportation	112 - 118
7.7	Merchandizing charges	119 - 122
7.8	Distribution	122 - 123
7.9	Total charges incurred in the marketing of fish and price spreads from producer to consumer	124
7.10	Finance of the fish trade	124 - 125
7.11	Government credit facilities for fishing industries	125 - 127
8.	Miscellaneous	128
8.1	Activities of the fisheries departments	128 - 133
8.2	Fish sub-committee's recommendations and action taken on them	133 - 134
8.3	Pisci-culture	134 - 137
8.4	Propaganda	137 - 139
Summary (commercial fishes, fishing gear, supply, imports and exports, per capita consumption, utilization, preparation for the market, prices, assembling, research, etc.)		140 - 145

Recommendations 146 - 149

Appendixes (Important fishes; Chief fishing implements; Private firms; World catch; Statistics from Indian fisheries; Quantities and prices; Indian Fisheries Act, 1897) 150 - 201

Glossary of Indian terms 202 - 203

Supplement to this report 205 - 212

Jhingran, V.G., Fish and fisheries of India. Delhi, India, Hindustan Publishing Corp., 954 p., 83 figs., 1977 233 tables

⟶ Aquaculture

Lawson, R.M. and E.A. Kwei, African entrepreneurship and economic growth: a case study of the fishing 1974 industry of Ghana. Accra, Ghana Universities Press, 262 p.

		Pages
1.	Introduction	9 - 18
2.	Statistics of growth	19 - 50
3.	Fisheries organization up to 1954	51 - 80
4.	The entrepreneurial response to the introduction of motor vessels	81 - 110
5.	Co-operative enterprise	111 - 125
6.	Entrepreneurship in fish marketing	126 - 163
7.	Developments in the private sector	164 - 178
8.	State entreprise	179 - 224
9.	Freshwater fisheries	225 - 231
10.	Development in the fishing industry since 1966	232 - 245
11.	Conclusions for the future	246 - 250

Appendix: Fisheries decree (motor fishing; skippers, second hands and engineers; general) 251 - 262

References at the end of each chapter

Laxenaire, M., Introduction to accounting and management for sea fishermen. Manual for extension 1973 workers. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (127):44 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Accounting (provides extension workers with information on how to draw up accounts in a small fishery enterprise)	3
	1.1 Description of a situation	4 - 7
	1.2 Accounting	8 - 23
	Summary	24
2.	Management (gives several examples of how to use accounting in the conduct of a business)	25
	2.1 What is management? What is its purpose?	26 - 28
	2.2 Was the skipper of our example right to borrow money to buy his boat?	29 - 30
	2.3 Additional savings	31 - 32
	2.4 Collective solutions	33 - 34

2.5 Accounting and management centre 35 - 36
2.6 How to keep accounts in a clear and simple manner 37 - 39

Advice to extension workers

Popular

Lowe-McConnell, R.H., Fish communities in tropical freshwaters. London, Longman, 337 p., 50 figs., 14 tables
1975

→ Biology

Macan, T.T., Freshwater ecology. London, Longman, 338 p., 65 figs., 39 tables
1963

→ Biology

Mackintosh, N.A., The stocks of whales. London, Fishing News (Books), 232 p., 25 figs., 47 photographs on 20 plates
1965

→ Biology

Nikolsky, G.V., Ecology of fishes. London and New York, Academic Press, 352 p., 140 figs., 25 tables
1963

→ Biology

Oda, S., The law of the sea in our time. Vol.2. The UN Seabed Committee, 1968-1973. Leyden, A.W. Sijthoff Publishing Co. BV, Sijthoff Publications on ocean development, Vol.4: 332 p.
1977

→ Legislation

Padelford, N.J., Public policy for seas. Cambridge, Mass., MIT Press, 338 p., tables, diagrams, 14 illustrations
1970

(fishery regulations in territories of the U.S.A.)

		Pages
	Introduction	1 - 3
1.	New goals for national policy	5 - 29
2.	Territorial waters and contiguous zones	31 - 66
3.	The continental shelf	67 - 102
4.	The seas and international law	103 - 132
5.	Living resources of the sea and their regulation	133 - 182
6.	Mineral resources and their exploitation	183 - 201
7.	Pollution of waters	203 - 231

8.	Safety of life at sea	233 - 259
9.	Models for the future	261 - 307
10.	Political process and the future of national ocean policy (Effective use of the sea; International decade of ocean exploration; The sea: our last unexplored frontier)	309 - 338

References in most chapters

Royce, W.F., 1972 Introduction to the fishery sciences. New York and London, Academic Press, 351 p., figs., tables

→ Biology

Scott, R.J., 1973 Fiberglass boat design and construction. Tuckahoe, New York, John de Graff, 144 p., 49 figs. 7 tables

→ Fishing vessels

Sedgwick, S.D., 1973 Trout farming handbook. London, Seeley, Service & Co., 157 p., 38 figs., 10 diagrams

→ Aquaculture

Smith, F.J., 1975 Fisherman's business guide. Camden, Maine, International Marine Publishing Co., 172 p., figs., tables

		Pages
Economic concepts		1
1.	Fishery resource management	3 - 8
2.	The decision-making progress	9 - 14
3.	Business objectives and planning	15 - 19
4.	Demand, supply, and fish prices	20 - 31
5.	Fishing costs and returns	32 - 44
6.	Maximizing profit in a fishing business	45 - 56
7.	Coping with risk and uncertainty	57 - 68
Management tools		69
8.	Developing management information	71 - 81
9.	Analysing the fishing business	82 - 94
10.	Budgeting for business decisions	95 - 99
11.	Budgeting for financial stability	100 - 110
12.	Legal forms of business organization	111 - 118
Applications		119
13.	Selecting a fishery	121 - 133
14.	Boat size and ownership	134 - 148
15.	Managing the boat	149 - 161
Bibliography		162 - 166
Index		167 - 172

Tesch, F.W., The eel: biology and management of anguillid eels. Eng. edition edited by P.H. Greenwood.
1977 London, Chapman & Hall, 434 p., 128 figs., 42 tables

→ Biology

Thomson, D.B., The seine net, its origin, evolution and use. London, Fishing News (Books), 192 p.,
1969 144 figs., 24 tables

→ Fishing

Tiews, K. (ed.), Proceedings of the International Seminar on fisheries resources and their management
1976 in Southeast Asia. Berlin, 19 November - 6 December 1974. Organized by the German Foundation for International Development in cooperation with the Federal Research Board of Fisheries and FAO. Bonn, Druckerei Heinz Lammerich, 522 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	General aspects	17 - 76
2.	Fisheries resources in Southeast Asia	77 - 154
3.	Management of fisheries resources in Southeast Asia	155 - 299
4.	Aquaculture	300 - 340
5.	Marine pollution aspects	341 - 396
6.	Country reports (Bangladesh, Hong Kong, Indonesia, Iran, Malaysia, Pakistan, Philippines, Singapore, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Vietnam	397 - 522

References at the end of most chapters

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 3. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 648 p.,
1967 figs., tables (3rd FAO World Fishing Boat Congress, Gothenburg 1965)

→ Fishing vessels

Wenk, E.Jr., The politics of the ocean. Seattle, University of Washington Press, 590 p., 14 figs.,
1972 13 tables

		Pages
	Introduction (History of oceanography and the consideration of the problems of the sea in the politics of U.S.A.	3 - 5
1.	Political geography of the blue planet	6 - 34
2.	Translating scientific discovery into cultural development	35 - 95
3.	Implementing the legislative mandate	96 - 166
4.	Managing the coastal environment	167 - 211
5.	Proposition: to unravel the mysteries of the sea	212 - 249
6.	One sea and one world	250 - 293
7.	Marine resources: government-industry synergism	294 - 331
8.	Organizing federal efforts	332 - 367
9.	Policy implications from a decade of marine development	368 - 400
10.	Alternative marine futures	401 - 437

Appendixes (Lists of shallow ocean areas; Coastlines; Petrolium potential; Acts, messages, statements, press releases, proclamations, excerpts, letters, etc., of and to the President of the U.S.; List of international organizations (without addresses); Convention on the Continental Shelf, 1958; Territorial seas and fishing jurisdictions 439 - 527

Notes (to the Chapters 1-10) 529 - 564

Indices 565 - 590

University level

EDUCATION

Methods of training; Fishermen's handbooks

Bradfield, D.J., Guide to extension training. Rome, FAO. FAO Econ.Soc.Dev.Ser., (6):169 p., 21 figs. 1977

		Pages
1.	Better nutrition and its relation to extension	1 - 6
2.	Extension principles	7 - 17
3.	Extension as an educational process	18 - 33
4.	Extension teaching methods	34 - 97
5.	Social and cultural factors in extension	98 - 114
6.	Working with people	115 - 128
7.	The planning and evaluation of extension programmes	129 - 143
8.	Additional considerations in planning extension	144 - 157
9.	Selected reading list	158 - 161
10.	Appendix: Job descriptions	162 - 165
11.	Index	166 - 169

Burgess, J., Fishing, questions and answers. Woodbridge, Suffolk, M.E. Publications, a division of the Marine Enterprises Company, 5 vols. 1972-1974

1972 Fishing, questions and answers. Vol.1:40 p., 6 figs.

		Pages
1.	Telecommunications	5 - 11
2.	Want an MFV?	12 - 14
3.	Dogger Bank itch	14 - 15
4.	Underwater corrosion	15 - 17
5.	Cuttlefish & Co.	17 - 19
6.	To register a fishing boat	19
7.	Fog	20 - 25
8.	Lifesaving equipment	25 - 26
9.	Ground discrimination	26 - 27
10.	Combat condensation	27 - 28
11.	Weights and measures	29 - 30
12.	Apprenticeship	30 - 31
13.	Crawfish, Crayfish & Co.	31
14.	Effect of water temperature	31 - 35
15.	Electronic equipment	35 - 37
16.	It pays to join the FOS	38 - 39
17.	Fishing gear and methods	39 - 40

1972 Fishing, questions and answers. Vol.2:47 p., 9 figs.

1.	Fishery protection service	5 - 9
2.	Grants and loans	10
3.	Eyesight tests	11 - 12
4.	DDT anti-fouling	12
5.	Great storms and tides	13 - 14
6.	On turning turtle	14 - 16
7.	Big fish	16 - 18
8.	Minimum sizes	18
9.	North Sea sand eels	19
10.	Drift and gill nets	20
11.	Black exhaust smoke	20 - 21
12.	Gilkes pumps	21 - 24
13.	Best of both worlds	25 - 26
14.	GRP fishing boat hulls	27 - 29
15.	Solid state, modular construction	30
16.	Wheelhouse windows	31
17.	Medical guide	32
18.	Stern tubes and glands	33
19.	Cod lures	34 - 35
20.	How to smoke eels	35 - 36
21.	Lifeboats for fishing	36 - 38
22.	Snoods	39 - 40
23.	Seine nets	40 - 43
24.	Back axle capstan	43 - 44
25.	Fishing overseas	44 - 47

1973 Fishing, questions and answers. Vol.3:47 p., 6 figs.

1.	Variation and deviation	5
2.	Amber and ambergris	6 - 7
3.	Propeller nozzles	7 - 9
4.	Nylon monofil trawls	9
5.	Fuel oils	10
6.	GRP fuel tanks	10 - 11
7.	Radar scanners	11 - 12
8.	Hydraulic drives	12 - 13
9.	Recorder paper	13
10.	C.P. propellers	14 - 15
11.	Buy the best binoculars	15 - 17
12.	Winch considerations	17 - 18
13.	Sulphur in fuel oil	18 - 19
14.	Cordage construction and measurement	20 - 21
15.	Buying a boat	21 - 24
16.	Jumbo wrist	24
17.	Cavitation	25
18.	Transducer cleaning	25
19.	Dubious about dimensions	26
20.	Foul trawl gear	26 - 27
21.	Propeller inspection wells	27 - 28
22.	Copper pipe deterioration	28 - 29
23.	Generators	30
24.	Battery capacity	30 - 32
25.	The mesh family	32 - 33
26.	White and grey line recording	33 - 34
27.	Small boat power block	34 - 37
28.	Fishing boat insurance	38 - 40
29.	Third party risks	41 - 43
30.	Paints for fishing boats	43 - 44
31.	Sweet or sour?	44 - 45
32.	Small craft deliveries	46 - 47

1973 Fishing, questions and answers. Vol.4:47 p., 4 figs.

1.	Vinge trawls	5
2.	The Larsen trawls	5 - 7
3.	Feeling wires	8
4.	Norsels and Ossels	8
5.	Stow nets	8 - 9
6.	Endless trolling lines	9 - 10
7.	Garfish lure	10
8.	Trawl warp meters	11 - 12
9.	Nail sickness	12
10.	Diaphragm pumps	12 - 13
11.	Automatic bilge pump	13 - 14
12.	How to salvage an outboard	14 - 15
13.	Synthetic longlines	15 - 16
14.	Trawling speeds	17
15.	Lampara nets	17
16.	When trawl fouls propeller	18
17.	Brake and shaft horsepower	18 - 19
18.	Fuel tank materials	19
19.	Trawling snags	19 - 20
20.	Lightning	20 - 21
21.	Coolers and heat exchangers	21
22.	Vibration	21 - 22
23.	Why so lubberly?	22 - 23
24.	Deformation in trawls	24
25.	Transducer frequencies	25
26.	Protection for steel hull	25 - 27
27.	Design and power	27 - 28
28.	Anti-poaching devices	28 - 29
29.	Porpoises and dolphins	29 - 30
30.	Gear wheels	31
31.	Knotless netting	31 - 32
32.	Wreck locator	32 - 33
33.	Herring sales procedure	34 - 35
34.	Ruptures	35
35.	Accumulators	36 - 37
36.	Gas heaters	37 - 38
37.	Racing diesel engine	38
38.	Wire ropes and extrusions	39 - 41
39.	Self-powered marine lights	42 - 43
40.	Splines for seams	44
41.	Sand smelts	44
42.	Fouled propellers	45
43.	Tangle nets	46
44.	Molgoggers	47

1974 Fishing, questions and answers. Echo sounders, fish finding. Vol.5:47 p., 5 figs.

1.	Simple echo sounders	5 - 7
2.	To install a sounder	8 - 9
3.	To earth sounders	10 - 11
4.	Transducer location	11 - 12
5.	Transducer frequency selection	12 - 13
6.	Ground discriminating transducer	14
7.	Inboard transducers	14 - 15
8.	Don't coat transducers	15 - 16
9.	Transducer frequencies	16
10.	Transducer cleaning	17
11.	CRT Scale Expanders and Scopes	17 - 18
12.	Multi-stylus sounders	18 - 19
13.	Net monitors	19 - 20
14.	Sophisticated net sounder	20
15.	White and grey line recorders	21 - 22

16.	Dyna and Contours line recorders	22 - 23
17.	Recorders in open fishing boats	23 - 24
18.	Recorder paper	24
19.	Elementary echo sounding	25 - 29
20.	Serrated trace	29 - 30
21.	Strange re-echoes	30
22.	Swim bladders	31 - 32
23.	Echoes and swim bladders	32
24.	Echoes from mackerel	32 - 33
25.	Crescent-shaped echoes	33
26.	Echoes from wrecks, etc.	34
27.	Delusive echoes	34
28.	Wreck locator	34 - 36
29.	Ground discrimination	36 - 37
30.	Gain control fish finding	37 - 38
31.	Outboard and echo sounder	38 - 39
32.	Sonar for small craft	39 - 41
33.	Some more uses for sonar	41 - 42
34.	Searching with sonar	42 - 44
35.	Fish finders for small craft	44 - 46
36.	Fish finding publications	46 - 47

Popular

Central Institute of Fisheries Operatives, Handbook on visual aids in fisheries education. Cochin, 1973 India, Director, CIFO, 37 p., 12 figs.

		Pages
1.	Introduction to visual aids in fisheries education	1
2.	Central Institute of Fisheries Operatives (in Cochin, S. India)	2
3.	Studies of trainees at CIFO	2 - 5
4.	Visual aids at CIFO	5
	4.1 Flipcharts	5 - 9
	4.2 Posters	9 - 11
	4.3 Drillsheets	12 - 23
	4.4 Displayboard	23 - 25
	4.5 Models	25 - 32
	4.6 Exhibits	32 - 36
	4.7 Projection aids	36 - 37
5.	Ability on the use of visual aids	37

Cole, R.C., Fisheries development and requirements of fishery education and training in Malaysia, 1973 Thailand, Fiji and the Philippines with particular reference to the artisanal sector. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Rep., (143):55 p., 4 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
	1.1 Scope of the study	1 - 2
	1.2 The present importance of the artisanal fisheries	2 - 3
	1.3 The future of the artisanal fisheries	3 - 6
	1.4 Fisheries extension services	6
2.	Malaysia	6 - 7
	2.1 The role of the importance of the fishery industry	7 - 8
	2.2 The present situation of the fisheries	8 - 9
	2.3 Prospects for the development of the fishery industry	9
	2.4 Government policy on fishery development	10 - 13
	2.5 Training facilities at present available	13 - 15
	2.6 Future training needs	15 - 18
	2.7 Summary	18 - 19
3.	Thailand	19
	Subdivision (see Malaysia)	19 - 30

4. Fiji 30

Subdivision (see Malaysia) 30 - 35

5. The Philippines 35

Subdivision (see Malaysia and "fishculture") 36 - 45

References 45 - 47

Appendix: The role of fisheries extension services in fisheries development

Cole, R.C. and D.N.F. Hall, Guide to fishery education and training. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., 1973 (128):343 p., tables

		Pages
1.	Primary considerations	1 - 7
2.	Fisheries occupations	8 - 35
3.	Manpower requirements	36 - 68
4.	Training programmes	69 - 111
5.	Management of programmes	112 - 143
6.	International aid and opportunities	144 - 152

Appendixes

1.	Case study in manpower analysis and training requirements	1 - 9
2.	Case study in manpower analysis, training requirements government personnel	1 - 4
3.	Case study in manpower analysis, training requirements for fish farmers	1 - 6
4.	Curricula (includes 51 curricula of different disciplines and levels)	1 - 99
5.	Literature (English, Publishers' addresses)	1 - 54
6.	Films and film strips	1 - 12
7.	References	1 - 6

Deltour, J.P., Directory of fishery training institutions. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (129):202 p. 1973

This directory includes only the institutions existing in developing as well as in developed countries as far as information has been available. They are institutions, schools, training centres, etc., of a permanent nature which give vocational education and training in the field of fisheries for extension workers (including field officers), operatives in the primary sector (fishermen at all levels, fish culturists, aquaculturists, technicians in engines, electricity, electronics, refrigeration and boat building, cooks, instructors). Excluded are institutions giving training for fishery scientists and scientific technicians or those concerned mainly with the training of specialists in processing technology, fishery economics and fishery cooperatives.

Hodson, A., The fishing cadet's handbook. London, Fishing News (Books), 108 p., 28 figs., 12 plates 1970

		Pages
1.	Rigging and equipment (blacksmiths, ironware, trawl doors, ropes, wires)	9 - 32
2.	An introduction to trawlers (crew, vessel, factory deck, construction and operating trawls, seine nets and purse seines)	33 - 61
3.	Care of the catch (gutting and cleaning, storage, liver boiling)	62 - 75

4. Safety at sea 76 - 84
5. Common fish species 85 - 92
6. The Bosun's Store (the log, clothing, port distinguishing letters, sea terms, International Code of Signals, sheet netting, braiding needles, repairing netting, legal limits of sea fish, meal times, watches, vessel markings, coastal sea areas) 93 - 108

Popular

ILO (International Labour Organization), Vocational training of fishermen, Geneva, ILO, 1965 122 p.

	Pages
1. Vocational training of fishermen	3 - 37
2. General principles and methods of fishermen's training	78
2.1 Planning and organization	78 - 79
2.2 Administration	79
2.3 Financing	80 - 82
2.4 International cooperation	82
2.5 Training personnel	82 - 83
2.6 Number of fishermen trained	83 - 88
2.7 Pre-vocational training programmes	89
2.8 Training programmes for boys without sea experience	89 - 91
2.9 Training programmes for working fishermen	91 - 95
2.10 Technical colleges	95
2.11 Methods of training	95 - 96
3. Discussion and conclusions of the committee on conditions of work in the fishing industry	102 - 103
4. Observations by governments on the conclusions concerning fishermen's vocational training	104 - 112
Annex: Proposed conclusions of training of fishermen (technical planning and administration; training programmes).	10 pages

Kreuzer, R. (ed.), Fishery products. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books) Ltd. 1975 for FAO, 462 p., 126 figs., 145 tables

——→ Processing

Lamb, J., Questions and answers on the marine diesel engine. London, Charles Griffin & Co., 1950 432 p.

——→ Fishing vessels

Noel, H.S. and A. Bowbeer (eds.), Fisherman's manual. London, World Fishing, 126 p., 1976

——→ Fishing

Smith, F.J., Fisherman's business guide. Camden, Maine, International Marine Publishing Co., 1975 172 p., figs., tables

→ Economics

WHO (World Health Organization), Fish and shellfish hygiene. Report of a WHO expert committee 1974 convened in cooperation with FAO. Rome, FAO, 62 p.

→ Safety and health

ENVIRONMENT

Oceanography, hydrology, limnology and meteorology

Arx, W.S. von, An introduction to physical oceanography. Reading, Maine, Addison-Wesley Publishing
1962 Co., 422 p., figs.

		Pages
1.	Early explorations and ideas	3 - 18
2.	On geological and astronomical backgrounds	19 - 44
3.	Tides and other waves	45 - 79
4.	Fluid mechanics	80 - 117
5.	Characteristics of sea water	118 - 139
6.	Advective processes	140 - 179
7.	Convective processes	180 - 212
8.	Current measurements by direct methods	213 - 243
9.	Current measurements by indirect methods	244 - 284
10.	Laboratory models	285 - 311
11.	The Gulf Stream problem	312 - 350
Appendixes		
A.	Some events that have influenced thought in the marine sciences	351 - 396
B.	Miscellaneous astronomical constants	397
C.	Miscellaneous terrestrial constants	398
D.	Gross properties of sea water	399
E.	Glossary of symbols	400 - 402
F.	Smaller handbooks and tables of constants	403
Indices		405 - 422

References and supplementary reading at the end of each chapter

University level

Balon, E.K. and A.G. Coche (eds.), Lake Kariba. A man-made tropical ecosystem in Central Africa.
1974 The Hague, Dr. W. Junk Publishers, 767 p., 293 figs., 12 colour photographs, 299 tables

		Pages
1.	Coche, A.G. (ed.), Limnological study of a tropical reservoir	1 - 9
1.1	The Zambezi catchment above the Kariba Dam, general physical background	11 - 47
1.2	The rivers and their characteristics	49 - 73
1.3	Lake Kariba physico-chemical characteristics	75 - 230
1.4	Conclusions	231 - 235
	Literature cited	236 - 242
	Annex I: General characteristics of the large African reservoirs	244 - 245
	II: Abbreviations and symbols	246 - 247
2.	Balon, E.K. (ed.), Fish production of a tropical ecosystem	249
2.1	Introduction	257 - 264
2.2	Methods	265 - 279
2.3	Age and growth studies	280 - 427

2.4 Total production, available production and yield of major fish taxa from Lake Kariba 428 - 445
2.5 The eels 446 - 458
2.6 Fish production of the drainage area and the influence of ecosystem changes on fish distribution 459 - 523
2.7 The success and failure of the clupeid introduction 524 - 541
2.8 Concluding discussion 542 - 557

Literature cited 558 - 573

Appendix I: Lists of symbols used 574
II: Efficiency of cove-rotenone samples 575 - 593
III: Tables of mean sizes of individual species, life intervals and growth intensity 595 - 602
IV: Tables of individual species and single samples production computations 603 - 623
V: Morphometry of sampling sites and standing crop tables 625 - 642
VI: Balon, E.K. and M. Chadwick, Time of ormulus inception: a pond experiment 643 - 646
VII: Lepidological study 647 - 676

3. Balon, E.K., Plates and annotated photographic summary of the Lake Kariba ecosystem 677 - 748

General index 749 - 767

University level

Bard, J. et al., 1976 Handbook of tropical culture. Nogent-sur-Marne, Centre Technique Forestier Tropical, 165 p., 126 figs., tables

——→ Aquaculture

Barnes, H. (ed.), 1963/1975 Oceanography and marine biology: An annual review. London, George Allen and Urwin, Oceanogr.Mar.Biol., Vols.1-13:pag.var., authors', systematic and subject indexes

This series has the following objects: to consider, annually, basic aspects of marine research, returning to each in future volumes at appropriate intervals; to deal with subjects of special and tropical importance; and to add new ones as they arise. Each article is written by experts in oceanography or marine biology.

University level

Beadle, L.C., 1974 The inland waters of tropical Africa. An introduction to tropical limnology. London, Longman, 352 p., figs.

Pages

1. Introduction 1 - 5
2. Historical background to scientific explanation 6 - 16
3. Geological and climatic history, present climates 17 - 33
4. Aquatic ecosystems: Productivity 34 - 47
5. The mineral composition of tropical African freshwater and its ecological importance 48 - 57
6. Water circulation and stratification in tropical lakes 58 - 87
7. Primary production in tropical lakes 88 - 105

8.	The evolution and distribution of the African inland water fauna	106 - 120
9.	The great rivers of Africa	121 - 137
10.	Lakes Albert and Rudolf	138 - 146
11.	The Sahara	147 - 159
12.	Lake Chad	160 - 174
13.	Lakes Edward and George	175 - 186
14.	Lake Victoria	187 - 205
15.	Volcanic-barrier lakes; Lake Kivu	206 - 213
16.	Lake Tanganyika	214 - 229
17.	Lake Malawi	230 - 240
18.	Tropical swamps, Adaption to scarcity of oxygen	241 - 258
19.	Temporary, saline and thermal waters. Lake Chilwa	259 - 282
20.	Manmade lakes	283 - 306
21.	Some comments and conclusions	307 - 316
Appendix	(tropical planktonic algae, crustacea, rotifera, dipteras, freshwater fish)	316 - 323
References		324 - 346
Glossary		347 - 349
Indices		351 - 365

University level

Bishop, J.E., 1973 Limnology of a small Malayan river. The Hague, Dr. W. Junk Publishers, 485 p., 67 figs. 15 black and coloured plates, 94 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1 - 2
2.	The environment	3 - 141
3.	The algae	142 - 186
4.	The invertebrate fauna	187 - 342
5.	The vertebrate fauna	343 - 370
6.	Zonation	371 - 378
7.	Pollution	379 - 386
Summary		387 - 393
References		396 - 426
Appendixes	(water quality, algae, macro-invertebrates, total drift, sample questionnaire, checklist)	437 - 465
Indices		467 - 485

Burgess, C.R., 1972 Metereology for seamen. Glasgow, Brown, Son and Ferguson, 252 p., 25 tables, figs.

		Pages
Factors, which go to make up weather		1
1.	The atmosphere	1 - 2
2.	Supply and distribution of heat in the atmosphere	3 - 8
3.	Water in the atmosphere	9 - 11
4.	Clouds	12 - 23
5.	Hydrometers	23 - 29
6.	Fog, mist and haze	30 - 37

7. Wind 38 - 43
8. Air masses and fronts 44 - 54
9. Some meteorological optical and other phenomena 55 - 66
10. Sea and swell 67 - 74

The climates of the ocean 74

11. World distribution of temperature, pressure and wind 74 - 79
12. The principal air masses affecting the oceans 80 - 87
13. Climatic controls and ocean current 88 - 93
14. The world's main rainfall regions 94 - 98
15. The climate of the tropical belt 99 - 111
16. The climate of subtropical and middle latitudes 112 - 124
17. The climate of high latitudes 125 - 130
18. Local weather 131 - 138

Weather forecasting 139

19. The professional forecaster at work 139 - 146
20. Weather forecasting by seamen 147 - 163
21. Watch your own weather 164 - 171
22. Radar and weather 172 - 179

Observing and recording the weather 180

23. Instrumental and non-instrumental observation 180 - 201
24. Organization of voluntary meteorological observation at sea 202 - 206
25. Meteorological centres 207 - 208

Appendixes (conversion tables; humidity tables; some recommended books; international codes, etc.) 209 - 245

Index

Popular

Cushing, D.H., Fisheries biology, a study in population dynamics. Madison, Wisc. University of Wisconsin Press, 200 p., 82 figs.
1968

→ Biology

Cushing, D.H., Marine ecology and fisheries. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 278 p., 68 figs. 15 tables
1975

Pages

1. Production cycles in space and time 1 - 24
2. Production cycles in upwelling areas 25 - 44
3. The part played by nutrients in the sea 45 - 61
4. Models of production in the sea 62 - 84
5. The circuits in migration and the unity of fish stocks 85 - 108
6. Growth and death in the sea 109 - 132
7. Population dynamics of fishes 133 - 164
8. Fish stocks and the production cycles 165 - 183
9. Food webs in the sea 184 - 200
10. Temporal changes in the sea 201 - 219
11. Climatic changes in life in the sea 220 - 236
12. The regulation of fish population by nature and by man 237 - 246

References 247 - 271

Index 273 - 278

University level

Cushing, D.H. and J.J. Walsh (eds.), The ecology of the seas. Oxford, Blackwell Scientific
1976 Publications, 440 p., 100 figs.

	Pages
1. Cushing, D.H., Introcdution: the ecology of the sea	1 - 20
The sea and the organisms that live on it	21
2. Smith, R.L., Water of the sea	23 - 58
3. Wyatt, T., Plants and animals of the sea	59 - 80
The structure of life in the sea	
4. Parsons, T.R., Structure of life in the sea	81 - 97
5. Steele, J.H., Patchiness	98 - 115
6. Longhurst, A.R., Vertical migration	116 - 137
Functions in the marine ecosystem	139 - 140
7. Dugdale, R.C., Nutrient cycles	141 - 172
8. Lorenzen, C.J., Primary production in the sea	173 - 185
9. Tranter, D.J., Herbivore production	186 - 224
10. Mann, K.H., Production on the bottom of the sea	225 - 250
11. Jones, R., Growth of fishes	251 - 279
Yield from the sea	281
12. Gulland, J.A., The production and catches of fish	283 - 314
Evolutionary consequences	315 - 316
13. Cushing, D.H., The biology of fishes in the pelagic community	317 - 340
14. Wyatt, T., Food chains in the sea	341 - 358
Theory	359
15. Kelley, J.C., Sampling the sea	361 - 387
16. Walsh, J.J., Models of the sea	388 - 407
References	409 - 446
Indices	447 - 467

University level

Edwards, R.W. and D.J. Garrod (eds.), Conservation and productivity of natural waters. London,
1972 Academic Press, 318 p., figs., tables

	Pages
1. Freshwater	
1.1 Environmental limits of plants in flowing waters	3 - 19
1.2 Nutrient budgets in rivers	21 - 40
1.3 The application of fundamental limnological research in water supply system design and management	41 - 67
1.4 Productivity of the river Thames at Reading	69 - 86
1.5 Approach to the problem of pollution and fisheries	87 - 114
1.6 Fish production in freshwaters	115 - 133
1.7 Problems of the conservation of freshwater ecosystems	135 - 154

2. Marine

2.1 Current biological problems in the conservation of deep-sea fishery resources 161 - 184
2.2 Laboratory studies related to zooplankton production in the sea 185 - 201
2.3 Changes in the distribution and abundance of zooplankton in the North Sea, 1948/69 203 - 212
2.4 Production cycle and the number of marine fish 213 - 232
2.5 On the importance of the Waddensea as a nursery area in relation to the conservation of the southern North Sea fishery resources 233 - 258
2.6 Some relationship between the food intake and growth of young fish 259 - 269
2.7 The possible contributions of radioecology to marine productivity studies 271 - 284
2.8 The potential productivity of waters on the West Coast of Scotland 285 - 296

Chairman's concluding remarks 297 - 300

Indices 301 - 318

References at the end of each chapter

University level

FAO, 1976 FAO/SIDA Training Course on Marine Pollution in Relation to Protection of Living Resources. Gothenburg, 1973. Lectures presented to the second FAO/SIDA Training Course on Marine Pollution in Relation to Protection of Living Resources. Supplement to the report. Rome, FAO/SIDA/TF, 108 Suppl., 109 p., figs., tables

——→ Pollution

Hela, I. and T. Laevastu, 1970 Fisheries oceanography. London, Fishing News (Books), 238 p., 122 figs., tables.

Pages

1. The purpose of this book and its manner of presentation 1 - 2

2. Some philosophy and principles of applied oceanography 3 - 6

3. The effects of environment on fish behaviour and abundance 7 - 8

3.1 Influence of temperature on fish 8 - 25
3.2 Effects of currents on fish and on their distribution and behaviour 25 - 32
3.3 Effects of light on fish 32 - 38
3.4 Influence of other environmental factors 38 - 47
3.5 Correlations between meteorological factors and fish behaviour 47 - 49

4. Oceanographic analyses and forecasts 50 - 51

4.1 The space and time scales and hydroclime data 51 - 54
4.2 The speed and magnitude of short-term changes in the ocean 54 - 60
4.3 Synoptic oceanographic analyses and forecasting 60 - 104

5. Data processing, storage and retrieval 105

5.1 Data processing and correlation analysis 105 - 111
5.2 Fishery charts 112 - 115

6. Some applications of environmental analyses/forecasts to fisheries 116

6.1 Forecasting availability of albacore tuna in the eastern Pacific Ocean 116 - 129
6.2 Interpretation and use of ocean thermal structure 129 - 137
6.3 Effects of currents on fishing operations 137 - 139
6.4 Visibility of gear and effects of environment on the use of artificial lights in fishing 139 - 144
6.5 Influence of weather on fishing 144 - 150
6.6 The problems of coastal waters 150 - 158

7. Submarine acoustics in fisheries and its dependence on the environment 159

7.1 Space and time variations of sound speed and sound refraction 159 - 160
7.2 The sound propagation modes 160 - 161
7.3 The active sonar equation 162 - 165
7.4 Propagation loss 165 - 176
7.5 Predictions of sound propagation in shallow water 177 - 178
7.6 The environmental and man-made noises in the sea 178 - 183
7.7 Reflection and scattering of sound by fish and other marine organisms 183 - 186
7.8 Use of sonars and echo sounders in fish finding, fisheries tactics and resources survey 186 - 192

8. Types of organizations of environmental services in fisheries, navigation and navies 193 - 196

9. Some problems and programs in fishery oceanography 197 - 211

Appendixes: (1) The Sippican Corporation Expendable Bathy Thermograph (XBT) 212 - 217
(2) Synoptic code for reporting BT and XBT data 217 - 218

References 219 - 227

Indices 229 - 238

Hickling, C.F., 1950 Water as a productive environment. London, Croom Helm, 250 p.

Horsfield, B. and P.B. Stone, 1972 The great ocean business. London, Hodder & Stoughton, 360 p., illustrations on plates, figs.

Hynes, H.B.N., 1970 The ecology of running waters. Liverpool, Liverpool University Press, 555 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Water flow and stream channels	1 - 27
2.	Physical characteristics of flowing water	28 - 35
3.	Chemical characteristics of flowing water	36 - 52
4.	Attached algae	53 - 77
5.	Higher plants	78 - 93
6.	Plankton	94 - 111
7.	Composition of the benthic invertebrate fauna	112 - 120
8.	Anatomical and behaviour adoptions of benthic invertebrates	121 - 160
9.	Further adaptations of benthic invertebrates	161 - 182
10.	Feeding mechanisms and food of benthic invertebrates	183 - 195

11.	Factors controlling benthic invertebrates	196 - 235
12.	Quantitative study of benthic invertebrates	236 - 255
13.	Effects of downswearn movements of organisms on the benthos	256 - 270
14.	Life histories and seasonal cycles of benthic invertebrates	271 - 299
15.	The fishes of running water	300 - 318
16.	Ecological factors affecting fish	319 - 341
17.	Movements and breeding of fish	342 - 363
18.	Feeding habits of fish	364 - 376
19.	Other vertebrates	377 - 382
20.	Longitudinal zonation	383 - 397
21.	Special habitats	398 - 410
22.	The ecosystem	411 - 442
23.	Effects of man on watercourses	443 - 450
	Bibliography	451 - 518
	Indices	519 - 555

University level

Jhingran, V.G., Fish and fisheries of India. Delhi, India, Hindustan Publishing Corp., 954 p., 1977 83 figs., 233 tables

→ Aquaculture

King, C.A.M., Beaches and coasts. London, Edward Arnold (Publishers), 570 p., figs. 1972

		Pages
	Introduction	1
1.	Introduction	3 - 7
2.	Methods of research	8 - 39
	Processe	41
3.	Waves in deep water	43 - 89
4.	Waves in shallow water	90 - 136
5.	The tide	137 - 164
6.	The effect of wind	165 - 190
7.	Sea level	191 - 211
	Beaches	213
8.	Beach material	215 - 233
9.	Movement of material normal to the shore	234 - 262
10.	Longshore movement of material	263 - 297
11.	The sorting of beach material	298 - 313
12.	Beach profiles	314 - 363
13.	The beach in plan	364 - 380
14.	Minor beach forms	381 - 400
	Coasts	401
15.	Coastal classification	403 - 416
16.	Constructive wave action and coastal erosion	417 - 447
17.	Destructive wave action and coastal region	448 - 484
18.	Historical data on coastal changes	485 - 497

19. Features characteristic of steep, intended coasts 498 - 523
20. Features characteristic of flood coasts 524 - 545
21. The marine cycle, conclusion 546 - 559

Indices 561 - 570

References at the end of each chapter

Kinne, O (ed.), 1970/1972 Marine ecology: a comprehensive, integrated treatise on life in oceans and coastal waters. Vol.1:pag.var. Environmental factors. Parts 1-3, London, Wiley-Interscience

Pages

Part 1 (1970)

1. Oceans and coastal waters as life-supporting environments 1 - 94
2. Light 95 - 320
3. Temperature 321 - 616
Indices 617 - 681

Part 2 (1971)

4. Salinity 683 - 1084
5. Water movement 1085 - 1156
6. Turbidity 1157 - 1194
Indices 1195 - 1244

Part 3 (1972)

7. Substratum 1579 - 1322
8. Pressure 1323 - 1450
9. Dissolved gases 1451 - 1526
10. Organic substances 1527 - 1577
11. Ionizing radiation 1579 - 1657
12. Factor combinations. Responses of marine poikilotherms to environmental factors acting in concert 1659 - 1722

Indices 1723 - 1774

References at the end of each chapter

University level

Lowe-McConnell, R.H., 1975 Fish communities in tropical freshwaters. London, Longman, 337 p., 50 figs., 14 tables

——→ Economics

Macan, T.T., 1963 Freshwater ecology. London, Longman, 338 p., 65 figs., 39 tables

——→ Biology

Oliver, R.C., 1965 Trawlermen's handbook. London, Fishing News (Books), 228 p., 133 figs., 5 colour plates, 4 black and white plates

——→ Fishing

Raymond, J.D.G., 1963 Plankton and productivity in oceans. Oxford, Pergamon Press, 660 p., figs., tables

→ Biology

Royce, W.F., 1972 Introduction to the fishery sciences. New York and London, Academic Press, 351 p., figs., tables

→ Biology

Russell-Hunter, H.D., 1970 Aquatic productivity: an introduction to some basic aspects of biological oceanography and limnology. New York, Macmillan Co., 306 p.

		Pages
1.	Productivity in evolution and nutrition	1 - 8
2.	Organic cycles and trophic levels	9 - 29
3.	The seasons in temperate seas	30 - 57
4.	Food-chains and productivity in temperate seas	58 - 93
5.	Polar, tropical and inshore seas	94 - 107
6.	Productivity in lakes	108 - 136
7.	Streams, rivers and water pollution	137 - 152
8.	A closer look at the biogeochemistry of some elements	153 - 182
9.	A closer look at energy transfer	183 - 194
10.	"Overfishing" and "underfishing"	195 - 209
11.	Productivity and evolutionary changes	210 - 224
12.	The finite nature of primary productivity	225 - 236
13.	The finite biomass and human nutrition	237 - 253
14.	Future marine exploitation	
	(A) Improvements in "sea-hunting" technology	253 - 273
15.	(B) Genesis of a "sea-farming" technology	274 - 286
15.	Recapitulations and implications	287 - 295
	Further reading	296 - 301
	Index	302 - 306

University level

Ruttner, F., 1973 Fundamentals of limnology. Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 295 p., 70 figs.

		Pages
A.	Water as an environment	
1.	Physical properties	7 - 56
2.	Dissolved substances and their transformations	56 - 104
B	Biotic communities	
3.	Plankton	105 - 175
4.	Survey of the other communities of lakes	175 - 220
5.	The communities of bogs	220 - 226
6.	The communities of running water	226 - 249
	Glossary	251 - 261
	Biography	262 - 279
	Index	281 - 295

University level

Sibthorp, M.M. (ed.), The North Sea, challenge and opportunity. Report of a Study group of the David
1975 Davies Memorial Institute of International Studies. London, Europe Publications, 324 p., 6 figs., 7 tables

		Pages
1.	Uses of the North Sea	1 - 40
2.	The sea and coastline as a supporting medium	41 - 66
3.	Competing uses and interests in the North Sea	67 - 84
4.	The present legal regime of the North Sea: International Law	85 - 157
	National Law	158 - 209
5.	Summary and recommendations	210 - 245

Apendixes

Treaties and conventions covering the North Sea	247 - 251
ICES map of the North Sea	252
Extract and map of petroleum and natural gas in the North Sea	253 - 269
Selected Belgian, Danish, Netherlands and Norwegian legal documents, covering aspects of North Sea exploitation	270 - 315
Index	317 - 324

References in footnotes in each chapter

University level

Tait, R.V., Elements of marine ecology: an introductory course. London, Butterworth & Co., 314 p.,
1972 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	The oceans	1 - 17
2.	Marine plankton	18 - 33
3.	Measuring and sampling	34 - 61
4.	Some parameters of the environment	62 - 119
5.	Organic production in the sea	120 - 149
6.	The sea bottom	150 - 169
7.	The sea shore	170 - 208
8.	Sea fisheries	209 - 283
9.	Energy relationships of marine production	284 - 294

Appendixes

Suggested topics for further study and class discussion or written work	295 - 297
Summary and laboratory exercises	298 - 299
Synopsis of a field course	299 - 306
Index	307 - 314

References at the end of each chapter

Whitton, B.A., River ecology. Stud.Ecol., 2:756 p., Oxford, Blackwell Scientific Publications,
1975 149 figs.

		Pages
1.	Beaumont, P., Hydrology	1 - 38
2.	Golterman, L., Chemistry	39 - 80
3.	Whitton, B.A., Algae	81 - 105
4.	Westlake, D.F., Macrophytes	106 - 128
5.	Fjerdingstad, E., Bacteria and fungi	129 - 140
6.	Jones, J.G., Heterotrophic micro-organisms and their activity	141 - 154
7.	Winner, J.M., Zooplankton	155 - 169
8.	Cummins, K.W., Macroinvertebrates	170 - 198
9.	Brown, V.M., Fishes	199 - 229
10.	Wetzel, R.G., Primary production	230 - 247

11.	Mann, K.H., Patterns of energy flow	248 - 263
12.	Castenholz, R.W. and C.E. Wickstrom, Thermal streams	264 - 285
13.	Whitton, B.A. and P.J. Say, Heavy metals	286 - 311
14.	Hawkes, A.A., River zonation and classification	312 - 374
15.	Wilhm, J.F., Biological indicators of pollution	375 - 402
16.	McIntire, C.D., Periphyton assemblages in laboratory streams	403 - 430
17.	Ball, R.C. and T.G. Bahr, Intensive survey: Red Cedar River	431 - 460
18.	Sioli, H., Tropical river: the Amazon	461 - 488
19.	Lester, W.F., Polluted river: River Trent, England	489 - 513
20.	Arthur, D.R., Constraints on the fauna in estuaries	514 - 537
21.	Toms, R.G., Management of river water quality	538 - 564
22.	Ridley, J.E. and J.A. Steel, Ecological aspects of river impoundments	565 - 587
23.	Cairns, J.Jr., Quality control systems	588 - 611
	Appendixes	
	Guide to further literature	612 - 616
	References	617 - 694
	Indices	695 - 725

University level

Wood, E.J.F. and R.E. Johannes, Tropical marine pollution. Amsterdam, Elsevier, Elsevier Oceanogr. 1975 Ser., (12):192 p., 30 figs., tables

——→ Pollution

Zeitschel, B. and S.A. Gerlach, The biology of the Indian Ocean. Berlin, Springer Verlag, 549 p, 1973 286 figs.

		Pages
1.	The environment	1 - 114
2.	Primary production and standing stock of phytoplankton and bacteria	115 - 188
3.	Standing stock and distribution of phytoplankton, zooplankton and particulate matter in selected areas	189 - 241
4.	Standing stock and distribution of zooplankton	243 - 414
5.	The distribution and ecology of fish larvae, fish and benthic organisms	415 - 473
6.	Transfer of organic matter in different trophic levels	475 - 520
	References	521 - 544
	Index	545 - 549

University level

FISHFINDING

Locating and detection of fish; hydroacoustic devices; echo sounding and echo ranging

Azhazha, V.G. and E.V. Shiskova, Fish location by hydroacoustic devices. Jerusalem, Israel Program for 1967 Scientific Translations, IPST Cat.No.1856:114 p., 92 figs., 20 tables

	Pages
1. The physical principles of fish finding	1 - 25
2. Hydroacoustic apparatus (echo sounders, sonars)	26
2.1 Soviet hydroacoustic apparatus	26 - 42
2.2 Foreign hydroacoustic apparatus	42 - 51
3. Recommendations for the use of echo sounders and sonars in fish finding	52
3.1 Using an echo sounder aboard ship	52 - 58
3.2 Echo recording of non-fish objects	58 - 68
3.3 Echo recording of shoals of fish	68 - 75
3.4 Prospecting for fish with the aid of an echo sounder	75 - 94
3.5 The use of sonar in the search and fishing of fall-winter concentrations of Atlantic	95 - 101
3.6 Calculating the search step of sonar	101 - 102
3.7 Determining shoal speed and direction of movement with the aid of sonar	102 - 103
Appendixes	
1. Yearly spare part requirements for NEL-4 and NEL-5 echo sounders	104
2. Various echo recordings of various fish species	104
References	110 - 113
List of abbreviations	114

Brandt, A. von, The use of new methods for locating fish over large areas. Tübingen, Institute for 1976 Scientific Co-operation, App.Sci.Dev., 7:112-24

	Pages
1. Introduction	112 - 113
2. Environmental conditions as parameters for fish schools	113 - 117
3. Air spotting of fish	118 - 120
4. Locating fish by satellites	120 - 122
References	123 - 124

Cushing, D.H., The detection of fish. Oxford, Pergamon Press, 200 p., 94 figs. 1973

	Pages
1. Where the fisheries lie	1 - 42
2. The indications of fish	43 - 72
3. Some elementary acoustics	73 - 92

4. The estimation of abundance with an echo sounder 93 - 126
5. The study of fish behaviour acoustically 127 - 146
6. The deep scattering layer 147 - 159
7. The use of more complex acoustic instruments 160 - 180

Bibliography 181 - 190

Indices 191 - 200

Dunlop, G.D., 1972 Navigation and finding fish with electronics. Camden, Maine, International Marine Publishing Co., 20 p., figs., 5 tables

Pages

1. Electronic navigation 1

1.1 Wave-length versus frequency 1 - 3
1.2 Ground waves and sky waves 3 - 7
1.3 Hyperbolic navigation systems 7 - 10
1.4 Radio direction finders 11 - 18
1.5 Automatic direction finder 18
1.6 Omni 19 - 20
1.7 Decca 20 - 25
1.8 Loran A 25 - 32
1.9 Loran C 32 - 34
1.10 Omega 35 - 38
1.11 Consolan 38 - 40
1.12 Radar 41 - 45

2. Sound transmission in water 47 - 48

2.1 Frequency versus range 48 - 49
2.2 Velocity of sound in water 50 - 53
2.3 Effects of depth finder beam width 53 - 56
2.4 The echo 56 - 66
2.5 Sonar for locating schools of fish 67 - 68
2.6 A complete system (for mid-water trawling) 68 - 72
2.7 Bathymetric charts 72 - 75
2.8 Pingers and transfinders 75 - 77

Index 79 - 80

ELAC, 1965 An introduction to echosounding. Kiel, ELAC-Electroacustic GmbH, 146 p., 35 figs.

Pages

1. Sound 5 - 17
2. Why use ultrasound? 18 - 21
3. Sounding technique and sounder principles 22 - 23
4. Factors limiting accuracy of measurement 24 - 29
5. Sounding technique 29 - 47
6. Graph indication 47 - 56
7. Interpretation of indications 56 - 76
8. Indication of fish 76 - 106

Figures 107 - 138

Fishing News International and Fishing News (ed.), Modern fishing gear of the world. 2. London, 1964 Fishing News (Books) Ltd., for FAO, 603 p., figs., tables (2nd FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, London 1963)

→ Fishing

Forbes, S.T. and O. Nakken (ed.), Manual of methods for fisheries resource survey and appraisal. Part 2. 1972 The use of acoustic instruments for fish detection and abundance estimation. Rome, FAO, FAO Man.Fish.Sci., (5):138 p., figs.

	Pages
Introduction	1 - 2
1. Physical properties of sound in water: its projection and reflection from targets	3
1.1 Propagation of sound	3 - 16
1.2 Reflection of sound in water	16 - 23
2. The structure and functioning of sonar equipment	24
2.1 Basic features of sonar equipment	24
2.2 Echo sounder	24 - 37
2.3 Horizontal echo-ranging system	37 - 41
2.4 Factors affecting the choice of equipment	41 - 42
2.5 Calibration of echo sounder and sonar systems	42 - 51
2.6 Exercises	51 - 55
3. The identification of targets and characteristics of echo records	56
3.1 General	56 - 57
3.2 Methods of identification	57 - 59
3.3 Characteristics of echo records	59 - 83
4. Abundance estimation	84
4.1 The history of echo surveying	84 - 86
4.2 Single fish echoes	86 - 97
4.3 Practical methods	97 - 120
4.4 Survey and sampling considerations	120 - 122
5. New developments in sonar techniques	123
5.1 Electronic sector-scanning sonar	123 - 129
5.2 Continuous transmission frequency - modulated (CIFM) sonar	129 - 133
References	134 - 138

Haines, G., Sound under water. Newton Abbot, David and Charles, 208 p., 17 figs., 12 plates 1974

	Pages
1. Basic concepts	12 - 31
2. Anti-submarine warfare	32 - 55
3. Navigation	56 - 81
4. Fish detection	82 - 126
5. Survey	127 - 171
6. Communication and control	172 - 189

Notes to the Chapters 1-4 191 - 195

Bibliography 197 - 202

Index 204 - 208

Hela, I. and T. Laevastu, Fisheries oceanography. London, Fishing News (Books), 238 p., 122 figs., tables
1970

→ Environment

IMCO, (Inter-governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), Code of safety for fishermen and fishing vessels. London, IMCO. Part B. Safety and health, requirements for the construction and equipment of fishing vessels. London, IMCO, 158 p., figs., tables
1975

→ Safety and health

Japan International Cooperation Agency, Japanese fishing gear and methods. Textbook for Marine Fisheries Research Course in Tokai Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 300 p.
1974

→ Fishing

Kristjonsson, H. (ed.), Modern fishing gear of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books) Ltd., for FAO, 607 p., figs., tables (1st FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, Hamburg 1957)
1959

→ Fishing

Kristjonsson, H., Techniques of finding and catching shrimp in commercial fishing. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish. Rep., (57) Vol.2:125-92, 57 figs., 1 table
1968

→ Fishing

Kristjonsson, H. (ed.), Modern fishing gear of the world. 3. Fish finding, purse seining, aimed trawling. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 516 p., figs., tables (3rd FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, Reykjavik 1970)
1971

→ Fishing

Simrad, Fish-finding with sonar. Oslo, Simonson Radio A.S., 96 p., figs.
1965

		Pages
1.	Devold, F., Introduction	7 - 9
2.	Vestnes, G., Search methods	10 - 26

3.	Vestnes, G., Classification (of sonar echo or sonar contact)	27 - 41
4.	Vestnes, G., Tactical application	42 - 46
5.	Jabosson, J., Sonar in the Icelandic herring fishery	47 - 57
6.	Midttun, L., Elementary acoustics	58 - 67
7.	Midttun, L., Some notes on elementary oceanography	68 - 79
8.	N.N., How sonar functions	80 - 96

Simrad, Pop technique. The echo sounder. Oslo, Simonson Radio A.S., 28 p., figs. 1971

		Pages
1.	"Pop" technique	1 - 5
2.	The pen speed	5 - 8
3.	The paper speed	8 - 12
4.	The pulse length	12 - 14
5.	Phasing	15 - 18
6.	Suppression	19 - 22
7.	Transducers and beam angle	23 - 25
8.	White line	26 - 28

Popular

Tucker, D.G., Underwater observation using sonar. London, Fishing News (Books), 144 p., 51 figs. 1966

		Pages
1.	Getting information under water	17
	1.1 Introduction	17 - 18
	1.2 The kinds of information needed in various fields of activity	18 - 27
	1.3 The possible methods of getting underwater information	27 - 56
2.	Acoustic waves, beams and echoes	57
	2.1 Introduction	57
	2.2 Acoustic waves	57 - 66
	2.3 Acoustic beams	66 - 78
	2.4 Reflection and refraction of acoustic waves and echo formation	78 - 90
3.	Basic principles of simple sonar systems	91
	3.1 The equipment	91 - 99
	3.2 Theoretical considerations of sonar systems	100 - 122
4.	Some typical sonar designs	123
	4.1 General	123 - 125
	4.2 Typical calculation	125 - 127
	4.3 Trends for the future	127 - 128
Appendixes		
1.	Description of a trawl	129 - 130
2.	The deep scattering layer	131 - 132
3.	Further discussions of rectification and envelopes of waves	133 - 136
4.	Further reading	137 - 139
Index		143 - 144

University level

Tucker, D.G., Sonar in fisheries - a forward look. London, Fishing News (Books), 136 p., 57 figs. 1967

		Pages
1.	Sonar in fisheries	19
1.1	Introduction	19 - 20
1.2	Echo-sounders	20 - 38
1.3	Sonar systems with nonvertical beams	38 - 42
1.4	The requirements for a worthwhile advance in sonar systems for demersal fishing	43 - 48
1.5	Conclusions	48 - 49
	Further reading	49 - 50
2.	The principles and potentialities of electronic-scanning sonar	51
2.1	The difficulties and limitations of ordinary sonar systems	51 - 55
2.2	The operation and field use of electronic-scanning sonar	56 - 58
2.3	Some results achieved with electronic-scanning sonar	58 - 78
2.4	The use of electronic-scanning sonar in demersal fishing	78 - 80
2.5	Fundamental principles of electronic-scanning sonar	80 - 94
2.6	Conclusions	94
	Further reading	94 - 96
3.	A forward look	97
3.1	Introduction	97 - 98
3.2	Wideband sonar	98 - 113
3.3	The exploitation of non-linearity in underwater acoustics	113 - 125
3.4	Digital sonar systems	125 - 131
	Further reading	131 - 133
	Index	135 - 136

University level

Wood, W.J., The echo sounder and its application. Grimsby, British United Trawlers Ltd., 21 p., 12 figs. 1972

	Pages
Introduction	2
The principles of echo sounding	3 - 11
Ground discrimination	12 - 21

Yudanov, K.I., Interpretation of echograms of hydroacoustic fishfinding instruments. Jerusalem, Israel 1971 Program of Scientific Translations, 101 p., 60 figs.

		Pages
1.	Search properties and hydroacoustic instruments	3 - 30
2.	Possibilities of recording fish with hydroacoustic instruments	30 - 50
3.	Interpreting distortions in the indications of fishfinding echo sounders	50 - 64

4. Species interpretation of echograms of hydroacoustic fishfinding instruments 64 - 79
5. Quantitative interpretation of echograms of hydroacoustic fishfinding instruments 79 - 95

Bibliography 96 - 100

FISHING (GEAR AND METHODS)

Fishing gear, design and construction; fishing methods and gear operation; fishing tactics; diving.

Alekseev, A.P. (ed.), Fish behaviour and fishing techniques. Proceedings of a conference held in
1971 Murmansk on the Kola-Peninsula - March 1968. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific Translations, 193 p., figs.

→ Biology

Andreev, N.N., Handbook of fishing gear and its rigging. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific
1966 Translations, IPST Cat.No.1654:454 p., 157 figs., 367 tables

	Pages
Fishing twines, ropes and netting	
1. Fishing twines	1 - 12
2. Ropes and cables	13 - 23
3. Netting	24 - 59
Commercial fishing gear	60
4. Gillnets and tangle nets (nets with vertical snoods, framed gillnets, two- and three-walled trammel nets, combined gillnets)	61 - 119
5. Stationary nets (traps, poundnets, fyke nets)	120 - 235
6. Seines and dragnets (beach seines, Danish seines, roundhaul nets, purse seines, trawls)	236 - 399
7. Hooks and lines	400 - 414
8. New fishing methods (Conical liftnet, fish-pumps, stick-held dipnet)	415 - 420
Reference tables, formulas, rigging details	
9. Floats and sinkers	421 - 430
10. Resistance of water flow, flexible twine, theory of hanging and tapering netting	431 - 450
References	451 - 453
Abbreviations	454

Baranov, F.I., Selected works on fishing gear. Vol.1. Commercial fishing techniques. Jerusalem,
1976 Israel Program for Scientific Translations, 631 p., 366 figs., 135 tables

	Pages
1. Kinds of fibrous materials and products made of them (designation, man-made fibres, properties)	1 - 25
2. Twines, cords and ropes (properties, knots, splicing)	26 - 47
3. External forces acting on fishing gear (water resistance, drag, flow, swell, waves, force exerted by fish)	48 - 82
4. Theory of flexible twines (method of exigating, shape and tension, elongation, pressure of twine, theory of ties)	83 - 130
5. Calculation of fishing gear, rigging and setting (also fishing gear under ice)	131 - 166

6.	Hooks and lines (longlines, roods, mechanization of longlines)	167 - 198
7.	Fishing nets (hand-knitting, measurement, handling, hanging, tapering, joining, mending)	199 - 250
8.	Theory of gillnet fishing (principle, twine thickness, efficiency, mesh size, colour)	251 - 280
9.	Fixed gillnets (design, rigging, fishing, net hauler, fishing under ice)	281 - 305
10.	Drift gillnets (river nets, marine nets, driftnet fleet)	306 - 334
11.	Stationary nets, roofed trapnets (fyke nets, wings, entrance opening, construction, setting, baskets, here also water wheels)	335 - 358
12.	Design and calculation of open stationary gear (poundnets - types, design and calculation)	359 - 391
13.	Theory of seining (moored and unmoored seines, mesh size, hauling)	392 - 409
14.	The technique of seining (lake, marine and river seining, mechanization, seining far from the shore and under ice)	410 - 433
15.	Calculation and design of drag seines	434 - 455
16.	Roundhaul nets (principle, lampara, ring net, purse seine purse seining)	456 - 483
17.	Dragnets (Danish seine, pair trawling)	484 - 501
18.	Trawls (beam trawls, otter trawl, innovations in trawling, efficiency)	502 - 521
19.	General theory of trawl (warps, otter boards, opening)	522 - 556
20.	New fishing methods (fishing with light, acoustic affects, electricity)	557 - 564
21.	Similarity, methods of modeling	565 - 584
22.	Method of simultation	585 - 608
	Appendixes	
	Notes (footnotes)	609 - 631

Ben-Yami, M., Russian-English glossary and related maritime terms. Jerusalem, Israel Program for
1975 Scientific Translations, 182 p.

	Pages
Glossary	1 - 140
Abbreviations	141 - 149
Index (English)	151 - 178
Bibliography	181 - 182

Ben-Yami, M., Fishing with light. FAO Fishing Manuals. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), for
1976 FAO, 121 p., 64 figs.

		Pages
1.	Fishing with fire	1 - 4
2.	Present light fisheries	6 - 29
3.	Lighting	30 - 37
4.	Fish and artificial light	38 - 49
5.	Fishing lamps	50 - 65
6.	Modern fishing methods and tactics	66 - 114
	Species caught with light attraction	115 - 118
	Bibliographic references	119 - 121

Brandt, A. von, 1972 Fish catching methods of the world. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 240 p.

		Pages
1.	Development of fishing gear	1 - 4
2.	Fishing without gear	5 - 8
3.	Male and female divers	9 - 13
4.	Animals as a help in fisheries	14 - 20
5.	Fish harvesting after stupefying	21 - 26
6.	Spearing, harpooning and shooting of fish	27 - 32
7.	Fishing with clamps, tongs and rakes	33 - 37
8.	Line fishing with or without hook	38 - 55
9.	Fishing for sport and fun	56 - 59
10.	Attracting, concentrating and frightening the fish	60 - 65
11.	Pole-hooks, rippers and sturgeon lines	66 - 72
12.	Natural and artificial shelters for fish	73 - 77
13.	Mechanical traps and snares	78 - 84
14.	Permanent and semi-permanent barriers	85 - 92
15.	From the fish basket to the pound net	93 - 104
16.	Fishing in the air	105 - 111
17.	Art of net making	112 - 117
18.	From the scoop basket to the stow net	118 - 128
19.	Rake, dredge and beamtrawl	129 - 135
20.	Fishing with bottom trawls	136 - 143
21.	Trawl fishery in three dimensions	144 - 151
22.	Gods, fishing and the captain's nose (fishing and beliefs)	152 - 157
23.	Beach seines and boat seines	158 - 165
24.	Fish shoals are surrounded	166 - 179
25.	Drive-in fishery	180 - 184
26.	Dip nets, lift nets and fish wheels	185 - 194
27.	Cover pots and cast nets	195 - 203
28.	Visible and invisible gill nets	204 - 209
29.	Entangling nets	210 - 214
30.	Harvesting machines	215 - 219
	Appendix: Classification of fishing gear and fishing methods	221 - 226
	Bibliography	227 - 232
	Indices	233 - 240

Burgess, J., 1971 Handlining and trolling. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 47 p., 4 figs.

		Pages
1.	Handlining	2
1.1	General	2
1.2	Boat and lay-out	3
1.3	Gear required	4 - 20
1.4	Rigging lines for cod and mackerel fishing	21 - 25
1.5	Grounds	26 - 27
1.6	Working handlines at sea	28 - 29
2.	Trolling	30
2.1	General	30
2.2	Boat and lay-out	31 - 32
2.3	Gear required	33 - 34
2.4	Rigging trolling lines	35
2.5	Grounds	36 - 37

	2.6 Trolling at sea	38 - 41
	2.7 Paravanes	42 - 43
Glossary		44 - 47

Popular

Burgess, J., Beam trawling. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 39 p., 4 figs. 1972

		Pages
1.	General	1 - 2
2.	Boat and lay-out	2 - 6
3.	Gear required	7 - 12
4.	Rigging	13 - 15
5.	Grounds	16 - 17
6.	Shooting and hauling	18 - 26
7.	Notes	27 - 32
8.	Glossary	33 - 39

Popular

Burgess, J., Fishing gear. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 72 p., 7 figs. 1973

		Pages
1.	Cordage, construction and materials	1 - 4
2.	Selecting rope	5 - 6
3.	Split film cordage	7 - 8
4.	Netting twines	9 - 14
5.	Salmon gill netting	15 - 16
6.	Twine deterioration	17 - 19
7.	Anti-fouled ropes	20 - 21
8.	Beach seines	22
9.	Mesh gauges	23
10.	Oil-fouled nets	24
11.	Floats and buoys	25 - 32
12.	Dan buoys	33 - 36
13.	How to rig a Dan buoy	36 - 37
14.	Net marker lights	38 - 43
15.	Otter boards	44 - 50
16.	Ground ropes and bobbins	51 - 55
17.	Ground rope for Thames estuary	56
18.	Hoop nets	57 - 59
19.	Twine twists	60 - 61
20.	How to make and throw a cast or compass net	62 - 64
21.	Discarded nets	65
22.	Netmakers to the world	66 - 72

(History of Bridport-Gundry Ltd.)

Popular

Burgess, J., Otter trawling. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 73 p., 5 figs, tables 1973

		Pages
1.	General	3 - 8
2.	Boat and lay-out	9 - 14
3.	Otter trawls and gear	15 - 27

4.	Rigging netting and gear	28 - 33
5.	Grounds	34 - 41
6.	Shooting, towing, hauling	42 - 54
7.	Notes (cod line knot, etc.)	55 - 65
8.	Glossary (Definitions)	66 - 73

Popular

Burgess, J., Shellfish trapping. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 64 p., 5 figs. 1973

		Pages
1.	General (crustaceae)	3 - 5
2.	Boat and lay-out	6 - 9
3.	Traps and gear	10 - 21
4.	Rigging, weighing, baiting	22 - 33
5.	Grounds	34 - 39
6.	Laying and lifting traps	40 - 46
7.	Notes (Fast trap hauling, Black-head lobsters, Hoop nets, Bait positioning, Crab fishing grounds in Great Britain)	47 - 60
8.	Glossary (Definitions)	61 - 64

Popular

Burgess, J., Longlining. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 48 p., 4 figs. 1973

		Pages
1.	General	2 - 3
2.	Boat and lay-out	4 - 6
3.	Gear required	7 - 15
4.	Rigging and baiting	16 - 23
5.	Grounds	24 - 28
6.	Shooting and hauling, basic methods	29 - 37
7.	Shooting and hauling, other methods	38 - 41
8.	Notes (Mechanization)	42 - 44
9.	Glossary (Definitions)	45 - 48

Popular

Burgess, J., Trammel netting. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 36 p., 6 figs. 1973

		Pages
1.	General description	1
2.	Boat, lay-out	2 - 3
3.	Nets and gear	4 - 7
4.	Rigging	8 - 11
5.	Grounds	12 - 13
6.	Operation at sea, in estuaries and rivers	14 - 25
7.	Notes (about handling)	26 - 32
8.	Glossary (Definitions)	33 - 36

Popular

Burgess, J., Eel trapping. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 30 p., 4 figs.
1973

		Pages
1.	General description	1 - 2
2.	Boats	3
3.	Traps and trawls (beamtrawls)	4 - 12
4.	Rigging	13 - 15
5.	Grounds	16 - 18
6.	Setting and hauling	19 - 22
7.	Notes	23 - 29
8.	Glossary (Definitions)	30 - 31

Popular

Burgess, J., Drift, gill and ray netting. Bridport, Dorset, Bridport-Gundry Ltd., 50 p., 5 figs.
1975

		Pages
1.	General	1 - 3
2.	Boat, lay-out	4 - 6
3.	Nets and gear	7 - 14
4.	Rigging	15 - 19
5.	Grounds	20 - 28
6.	Operation of drift nets; surface, sunken and moored gill nets; ray nets	29 - 38
7.	Notes	39 - 46
8.	Glossary (Definitions)	47 - 50

Popular

Chen, T.P., Aquaculture practices in Taiwan. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 161 p., 98 figs.,
1976 1 map of Taiwan

→ Aquaculture

Cushing, D.H., Fisheries resources of the sea and their management. London, Oxford University Press,
1975 87 p., 9 figs., 2 tables

→ Biology

Cushing, D.H. and J.J. Walsh (eds.), The ecology of the seas. Oxford, Blackwell Scientific Publications,
1976 400 p., 100 figs.

→ Environment

Drew, E.A., J.N. Lythgoe and J.D. Woods (eds.), Underwater research. London, Academic Press, 430 p.,
1976 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Hollien, H. and H.B. Rothman, Diver communication	1 - 80
2.	Hollien, H. and S. Feinstein, Hearing in divers	81 - 138

3.	Cocking, S.J., Improving underwater viewing	139 - 190
4.	Ross, H.E. and S.S. Franklin, Depth estimation by divers	191 - 198
5.	Fay, C.W., An investigation into colour vision underwater	199 - 207
6.	Ross, H.E. and M.H. Rejman, Narcosis and visual attention	209 - 216
7.	Osborne, J.P. and F.M. Davis, Diver performance - nitrogen narcosis and anxiety	217 - 224
8.	Davis, F.M., J. Bevan, J.P. Osborne and J. Williams, Body temperature monitoring during diver performance experiments	225 - 235
9.	Morrison, J.B., The measurement of respiration at high ambient pressures	237 - 251
10.	Ray, B., The design of a lightweight underwater habitat	253 - 259
11.	Ray, B. The use of an underwater habitat as a quiet laboratory for tests on diver hearing	260 - 266
12.	Farrington-Wharton, R., Towards the development of a practical underwater theodolite	267 - 275
13.	Cooke, G., The design and application of free-flooding diver transport vehicles	277 - 283
14.	Caddy, J.F., Practical considerations for quantitative estimation of benthos from a submersible	285 - 298
15.	Lundälv, T.L., A stereophotographic method for quantitative studies on rocky-bottom biocoenoses	299 - 302
16.	Dart, J.K.G. and P.S. Rainbow, Some underwater techniques for estimating echinoderm populations	303 - 311
17.	Crump, R.G., Nocturnal behaviour in aggregations of Acanthaster planci in the Sudanese Red Sea	313 - 318
18.	Hiscock, K. and R.M. Howlett, The ecology of Caryophyllia smithi strokes and broderip on southwestern coasts of the British Isles	319 - 334
19.	Spence, D.H.N., Light, zonation and biomass of submerged freshwater Macrophytes	335 - 345
20.	Campbell, R.M. and D.H.N. Spence, Preliminary studies on the primary productivity of Macrophytes in Scottish freshwater lochs	347 - 355
21.	Drew, E.A. and B.J. Jupp, Some aspects of the growth of Posidonia oceanica in Malta	357 - 367
22.	Drew, E.A., B.P. Jupp and W.A.A. Robertson, Photosynthesis and growth of Laminaria hyperborea in British waters	369 - 379
23.	Trench, R.K., Deposition of calcium carbonate skeletons by corals: an appraisal of physiological and ecological evidence	381 - 394
24.	Fleming, N.C. and N.M.G. Czartoryska, Archaeological evidence for eustatic sea level change and earth movements in southwest Turkey	395 - 403
25.	Green, J.N., Cape Andreas expedition, 1969	405 - 411
	Index	413 - 430

References at the end of each chapter

University level

FAO, Fisheries in the food economy. Rome, FAO, FAO Basic Stud., (19):79 p., 8 tables
1968

→ Economics

FAO, Catalogue of fishing gear designs. London, Fishing News (Books), 155 p., figs., tables 1972

		Pages
I.	Foreword	5 - 7
II.	Mode of presentation	8 - 13
III.	Appendixes	
	1. Abbreviations and symbols used for the designs	16 - 17
	2. Equivalents and conversions	18
	3. Trade names of synthetic fibres	19
	4. Examples of common netting yarns	20 - 21
	5. Cutting rates and taper ratio	22 - 25
	6. Examples of synthetic fibre ropes	26
	7. Glossary of fishing gear terms	27 - 32
IV.	Designs and specifications	
	Trawls	41 - 106
	Danish seines	107 - 114
	Lampara	115
	Purse seines	116 - 131
	Liftnets	132 - 134
	Stownets	135 - 136
	Gillnets and tangle nets	137 - 141
	Pots	142 - 148
	Dredges	149 - 150
	Lines	151 - 155

FAO, Otterboard design and performance. FAO Fishing Manuals. Rome, FAO, 82 p., 39 figs., 5 tables 1974

		Pages
1.	Background	
	Evolution of otterboards; General principles of otterboard dynamics; Towing force; Drag of the net; Hydrodynamic forces; Gravity; Bottom friction; Interaction of forces	3 - 11
2.	Otterboard investigation and theory	
	Direct observation; Measurement and calculation; Full-scale trials; Model tests; Methods; Theory; Examples; Accuracy and limitations; Comparison between full-scale and model tests; Midwater trawling; Bottom trawling	12 - 33
3.	Commercial practice in the matching of otterboards to nets and trawlers	
	Bottom trawling; Midwater trawling; Dual-purpose trawling; Otterboard, trawlnet and towing power; Guidance for selection of otterboards	34 - 48
4.	Otterboard design, construction and performance	
	Rectangular flat; Rectangular flat, wide-keeled; Rectangular, cambered (low aspect ratio); Oval flat slotted; Oval cambered slotted (polyvalent); V-type; Rectangular, special design (diverting depressor); Rectangular, cambered (high aspect ratio, Süberkrüb type); Otterboard centre of gravity	49 - 76

5. Summary 77 - 81

Bibliographic references 82

FAO Fishery Industries Division (ed.), Contributed papers submitted to the expert consultation on
1976 fishing for squid and other cephalopods. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Rep., (170) Suppl.1:150 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Hamabe, M. et al., Review of cephalopod resources and their exploitation by Japan	1 - 3
2.	Okutani, T. and H. Hatanaka, Distribution of ommastrephid and large-sized loligmid squids	4 - 8
3.	Murakami, K., Distribution in relation to environment of squid in the northwest Pacific and the Okhotsk Sea	9 - 17
4.	Araya H., Distribution and migration of the winter subpopulation of Todarodes pacificus (Steenstrup) in the northern waters of Japan	18 - 23
5.	Yasui, T., Fluctuations in abundance of the winter subpopulation of Todarodes pacificus	24 - 29
6.	Kasahara, S. and T. Nasumi, Present state and future aspects of the fishery for the common squid Todarodes pacificus (Steenstrup) in the Sea of Japan	30 - 46
7.	Hamabe, M. et al., Perspectives for Japanese overseas squid fisheries	47 - 52
8.	Saito, R., The Japanese fishery (jigging) for Nototodarus sloani sloani in New Zealand waters	53 - 60
9.	Sato, T., Results of exploratory fishing for Dosidicus higas (D'Obrigny) off California and Mexico	61 - 67
10.	Ichikawa, W. and T. Sato, The present state of exploitation of Illex illecebrosus off New York and Newfoundland	68 - 75
11.	Suzuki, H., One significant by-catch of Illex coindetii (Verany) from trawling off Guinea Bissau, Africa	76
12.	Sakamoto, T., The Japanese northern oceanic octopus fishery	77 - 78
13.	Itami, K., The inland sea octopus fisheries	79 - 84
14.	Yajima, S. and S. Mitsugi, Japanese squid jigging gear	85 - 88
15.	Suzuki, T., Echo sounding for squid Todarodes pacificus (Steenstrup) in the offshore waters of the Sea of Japan and estimation of its abundance	89 - 92
16.	Ogura, M., Fishing lamps and light attraction for squid jigging	93 - 98
17.	Ogura, M., Fishing tackle and fishing efficiency in squid jigging	99 - 102
18.	Hamuro, C. and S. Mizushima, Concept and design of the 99 GT squid jigging vessel	103 - 106
19.	Kato, S. and J.E. Hardwick, The California squid fishery	107 - 127
20.	Koyama, T., Japanese trawling gear for octopus and squid	128 - 132
21.	Engel, H.H., Commercial trawling gear used for squid fishing in the northern Atlantic	133 - 141
22.	Yamashita, Y., The octopus fishery of Hokkaido	142 - 147
23.	Miwa, K. et al., Preservation on board	148 - 150

References at the end of each contribution

Fischer, W. (ed.), FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Fishing area 37, Mediterranean
1973 and Black Sea. Rome, FAO, 2 vols., pag.var.

→ Biology

Fischer, W. and P.J.P. Whitehead (eds.), FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes.
1974 Fishing area 57 and 71, Eastern Indian Ocean and Western Central Pacific. Rome, FAO, 4 vols., pag.var.

→ Biology

Fishing News International and Fishing News (eds.), Modern fishing gear of the world. 2. London,
1964 Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 603 p., figs., tables (2nd FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, London 1963)

	Pages
Materials for nets and ropes	
1. Terminology	3 - 8
2. Test methods	9 - 49
3. New net materials	50 - 80
4. Ropes, knotless nets and monofilaments	81 - 119
Bulk fish catching	
5. Stern trawling	147 - 164
6. Bottom trawling	165 - 220
7. Midwater trawling	221 - 262
8. Gillnetting, longlining and traps	263 - 293
9. Purse seining	294 - 313
10. Deck machinery	314 - 362
11. Fish detection	363 - 422
12. Fleet operation	423 - 446
Technical research	
13. Gear research	471 - 496
14. Instruments for testing gear	497 - 528
15. Fish behaviour	529 - 582
16. Science and the future	583 - 594
Index	597 - 603

Forrest, D.M., Eel capture, culture, processing and marketing. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books),
1976 66 photographs, 24 figs., 49 tables

→ Aquaculture

Fridman, A.L., Theory and design of commercial fishing gear. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific
1973 Translations, IPST Cat.No.60047-4:489 p., 235 figs., 46 tables

	Pages
The theoretical basis of designing fishing gear	1
1. Commercial fishing gear as engineering equipment	1 - 21
2. The effect of external forces on fishing gear	22 - 44
3. Resistance of water to the motion of fishing gear	45 - 72
4. Analytical method for the calculation of flexible twine	73 - 95
5. Graphosatic method for the calculation of flexible twine	96 - 104
6. The geometry of netting	105 - 121
7. Modeling of fishing gear	122 - 191
8. Calculation and investigation of fishing gear by mechanical imitation	192 - 207

Design of commercial fishing gear

9.	Principles of designing commercial fishing gear	208 - 245
10.	The theory and design of trawls	246 - 295
11.	Design of the trawl	298 - 319
12.	Enmeshing fishing gear	320 - 346
13.	Pelagic seines (purse seines)	347 - 375
14.	Stationary fishing gear	376 - 402
15.	Bottom seines (Danish seines)	403 - 413
16.	Beach seines (Drag seines)	414 - 428
17.	Fishing hooks and lines	429 - 440
18.	Fishing with light	441 - 455
19.	Electric fishing gear	456 - 469

Appendix (tables) 470 - 472

Bibliography 473 - 488

Lists of abbreviations 489

University level

Garner, J., 1973 Modern inshore fishing gear. Rigging and mending. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 67 p., 68 figs.

		Pages
1.	Development of inshore fishing gear (trawl)	13 - 15
2.	The use of fishing nets in inshore waters	16 - 19
3.	Specifications for inshore nets	20 - 28
4.	Fitting and rigging inshore nets	29 - 33
5.	A practice net for the beginner	34 - 36
6.	Net braiding	37 - 46
7.	Net mending and assembly (1)	47 - 54
8.	Net mending and assembly (2)	55 - 65

Appendix (The trawl net pattern, The rigging ropes, Other methods of specifying trawl gear) 66 - 67

Garner, J., 1977 Modern deep sea trawling gear. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 83 p., 42 figs., 2 charts

		Pages
1.	The empirical development of trawl gear (design and operation)	6 - 13
2.	Trawl nets: their design and development	14 - 24
3.	Conventional trawl net assembly and rigging practices	25 - 36
4.	Development away from conventional trawl gear	37 - 58
5.	Otter boards: their design and efficiency	59 - 66
6.	Developing gear for stern trawlers	67 - 71
7.	General notes on operational procedures and assemblies	72 - 74
8.	Popular medium-class trawling gears	75 - 78

Appendixes

Gear used by Aberdeen trawlers for Faroe	79
Foster, J.J., Look at future applications	80 - 82
To become a skipper	82
Conversion table (inches, millimetres, feet, metres, fathoms)	83

George, V.C., 1971 An account of the inland fishing gear and methods of India. Indian Council of Agricultural Research. Spec.Bull.Cent.Inst.Fish.Technol., Ernakulam, (1):68 p., 27 figs., tables

	Pages
Introduction	1
1. Line fishing	2
2. Fish traps	2 - 3
3. Aerial traps	3 - 4
4. Bag nets with fixed mouth	4 - 7
5. Surrounding gear	7 - 8
6. Drive-in nets	8
7. Falling nets	8 - 9
8. Gill nets	9 - 10
9. Purse nets	10
Materials used for fishing gear and preservatives	10 - 11
Discussion	11 - 13
Summary	14
References	67 - 68

Hamuro, C., 1974 Textbook of fishing methods. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 206 p., 114 figs., 41 tables

	Pages
Foreword: on fishing methods	1
1. Definition of fishing methods	1
2. Classification of fishing methods	1 - 3
2.1 "Shore-based" fishing methods	2
2.2 Boat-based fishing methods	2
3. Outline of each fishing method	3
3.1 Methods in which the running of boats plays a main part in fishing (trawling, seining, dragging)	3 - 37
3.2 Methods in which fishing is partly done while boats are running and other parts are done while at a stop (purse seining, gillnetting, longlining)	38 - 155
3.3 Fishing method to use a fishing boat as a fishing ground only (squid fishing, mackerel fishing, skipjack pole-and-line fishing, stick-held dipnet method)	156 - 177
4. Relation between fishing boat and functions of fishing gear	177 - 181
5. Measuring instruments necessary for fishing methods and application	181
5.1 Measuring instruments required by fish catching (fish finders, warp length and tension meters, trawling speed meter)	181 - 202
5.2 Measuring instruments required for detecting fishing boat location and its application (nautical instruments: sextant, direction finder, radar, Loran A)	203 - 206

Hela, I. and T. Laevastu, Fisheries oceanography. London, Fishing News (Books), 238 p., 122 figs.,
1970 tables

→ Environment

India Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agricultural marketing
1951 in India, preliminary guide to Indian fish, fisheries, methods of fishing and curing. Delhi, Manager of Publications, Government of India, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (66):137 p., 66 plates

→ Biology

India Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Marketing of fish in
1961 India. Nagpur, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (126): 212 p., 36 plates, tables

→ Economics

International Cable Protection Committee, Trawling and submarine cables. London, I.C.P.C., 16 p.,
1971 10 figs.

		Pages
1.	Scope	1
2.	Importance of avoiding submarine cables	1
3.	Fouling of cable by trawling gear	2 - 6
4.	Maintenance and construction of otterboards	6 - 7
5.	Law of the sea relating to submarine cables	7
6.	Action to be taken if a cable is fouled	7 - 8
7.	Some facts on submarine cable types	8 - 11
8.	Charting of submarine cables	11 - 12
9.	Importance of keeping clear of cable vessels and buoys	13 - 14
10.	Other methods of reducing cable damage	15 - 16

Popular

Japan International Cooperation Agency, Japanese fishing gear and methods. Textbook for Marine
1974 Fisheries Research Course in Tokai Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 164 p.

		Pages
1.	Shimozaky, Y., Materials of fishing nets and ropes	1 - 32
2.	Koyama, T., Trawl fishery	33 - 56
3.	Koyama, T., Propulsive efficiency of trawler during towing	57 - 66
4.	Osawa, Y., Purse seine fishery	67 - 102
5.	Nomura, M., Gill net fishery	103 - 130
6.	Mori, K., Set net fishery	131 - 168
7.	Tawara, Y., Fish finder	169 - 208
8.	Mitsugi, S., Fish lamps	209 - 240
9.	Yayima, S., Fishery machinery	241 - 274
10.	Taketomi, H., Underwater sound, fish and fishery	275 - 300

Jhingran, V.G., Fish and fisheries of India. Delhi, India Hindustan Publishing Corporation, 954 p., 1977 83 figs., 233 tables

→ Aquaculture

Kanagawa International Fisheries Training Center, Outline of fishing gear and method. Tokyo, Japan 1978 International Cooperation Agency, 123 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Fishing gear and method	1
1.1	Principal gear, auxiliary gear and subsidiary gear	1
1.2	Classification of fishing gear	1 - 2
1.3	Classification of fisheries in Japan	3 - 4
1.4	Kind of fibres used in fisheries	4
1.5	Properties of synthetic fibres	5 - 6
1.6	Characteristics of netting by type of knot	7
1.7	Depth and length of netting	7
1.8	Weight of netting	8
1.9	Tensile strength of netting	9
1.10	Float and buoy	9 - 11
1.11	Sinker	11 - 12
1.12	Fabrication of fishing net	12 - 18
1.13	Outline of fishing gear and method	18
	Gillnet (and trammel net) fishery	18 - 28
	Trawl fishery	29 - 37
	Fishery with surrounding nets	38 - 51
	Liftnet fishery	52 - 59
	Setnet (poundnet) fishery	60 - 67
	Fishing tackle (for line fishing)	68 - 76
2.	Practice of fishing gear fabrication	77
2.1	Gillnet (trammel net)	77 - 78
2.2	Purse seine	79
2.3	Trawls	80 - 85
2.4	Small-type setnets (poundnets)	86 - 96
2.5	Stick-held dipnet	97 - 100
2.6	Gear for line fishing	101 - 103
3.	Practice of hitching (knotting)	104 - 107
4.	Marine diesel engine	108
4.1	Outline of diesel engine	108 - 113
4.2	Name for engine parts	114 - 116
4.3	Reduction/reversing engine	117 - 118
4.4	Stern arrangement and propeller	119
4.5	Measuring instruments and small tools	120 - 123

Korringa, P., Development in aquaculture and fisheries science. Amsterdam, Elsevier, Vols.1-4 1976

→ Aquaculture

Koyama, T., 1975 Trawl guide note. Tokyo, Overseas Fishery Cooperation Foundation, 69 p., 69 figs., 5 tables

	Pages
Trawl guide note	
1. Stern trawl fishing gears	2
1.1 Netting cutting	2
1.2 Trawl net tapering	3 - 8
1.3 Fixing of main rope and ground bobbin	9 - 12
1.4 Codend	12 - 13
1.5 Wires and attached gears	14 - 17
2. Net shooting and hauling methods with stern trawl fishing gears	18
2.1 Net shooting method	18 - 20
2.2 Net hauling method	21 - 25
2.3 Crew assignments during net shooting and net hauling	25 - 26
3. Equipment of stern trawler	27
3.1 Top rollers	27 - 29
3.2 Stopper eye plates for otterboards	29 - 30
3.3 Stern configuration	31 - 32
3.4 Mast height and slipway sloping	32 - 34
3.5 Wide blocks mounted on the mizzen mast	34
3.6 Perspective from the bridge	34 - 35
Method of computation for seeking suitable size of trawl gear to horsepower of main engine of trawler	
1. Power to pull trawl	37 - 41
2. Trawl winch	42 - 44
3. Trawl net	44 - 51
4. Otterboard	51 - 56
5. Trawl warp	56 - 58
6. Power to pull trawl and size of gear	58 - 59
Propulsive efficiency of trawler during towing	
1. Wake coefficient	61
2. Thrust reduction coefficient	62 - 65
3. Propeller efficiency ratio	65
4. Open propeller efficiency	65 - 67
5. Propulsion efficiency and net-pulling power	68 - 69

Kristjonsson, H. (ed.), 1959 Modern fishing gear of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 607 p., figs., tables (1st FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, Hamburg 1957)

	Pages
1. Materials, terminology and numbering systems	1 - 12
2. Characteristics of fishing twines and their testing	13 - 99
3. Net making	100 - 112
4. Net preservation	113 - 138
5. Relative efficiencies of nets made of different materials	139 - 165
6. Rational design: Engineering theory and model testing	166 - 208
7. Rational design: Use of measuring instruments and underwater observations	209 - 259
8. Rational design: Methods of specifying fishing gear	260 - 273
9. Fishing gear and its operation	274 - 452

10.	The location of fish	453 - 473
11.	The detection of fish	474 - 537
12.	Attraction of fish	538 - 574
13.	Electrical fishing	575 - 595
14.	Closing remarks: Discussion on future developments	596 - 598
	Index	601 - 607

Kristjonsson, H., Techniques of finding and catching shrimp in commercial fishing. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish. 1968 Rep., (57) Vol.2:125-92

		Pages
1.	Introduction	127
2.	Shrimp finding	127 - 138
3.	Some important shrimp fisheries	138
3.1	Gulf of Mexico	138 - 154
3.2	Northeast coast of America	154 - 155
3.3	Persian Gulf	155 - 160
3.4	West Africa	160 - 162
3.5	India	162 - 164
3.6	Norway	164 - 168
3.7	Mediterranean	168 - 171
3.8	Western Europe	171 - 174
3.9	Japan	175 - 188
4.	Chart of comparative sizes of shrimp trawls	189
	References	191 - 192

Kristjonsson, H. (ed.), Modern fishing gear of the world. 3. Fish finding, purse seining, aimed 1971 trawling. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 516 p., figs., tables (3rd FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, Reykjavik 1970)

		Pages
1.	Fish finding	1
1.1	Location of fishing grounds	2 - 40
1.2	Fish detection - visual	41 - 55
1.3	Fish detection - echo sounding	56 - 122
1.4	Fish detection - sonar	123 - 156
2.	Purse seining	157
2.1	Description of major fisheries	158 - 253
2.2	Net design, materials and construction	253 - 282
2.3	Deck equipment for purse seining: vessel noise, future trends	283 - 316
3.	Aimed trawling	317
3.1	Materials, design, construction and selection of gear	318 - 377
3.2	Trawl gear instrumentation	378 - 410
3.3	Aiming techniques	411 - 449
3.4	History and description of some established fisheries	450 - 496
4.	Fishing in the future (automated fishing platform; luring by underwater sound; automation of fishing)	497 - 516

Lal, K.B., 1969 An introduction to fishing gear technology. New Delhi, Metropolitan Book Co. PVT, 229 p., 45 tables

		Pages
1.	Biological factors in fishing (fish behaviour including bio-acoustics)	1 - 15
2.	Classification of fishing gear	16 - 34
3.	Fishing gear of India	34 - 54
4.	Natural and synthetic fibers (and their properties)	55 - 72
5.	Yarn and netting twines (including designation and testing)	73 - 87
6.	Knotted and knotless netting (knots, mesh size)	88 - 103
7.	Assembling of netting (fixing, joining, cutting, repairing, measuring)	104 - 118
8.	Ropes, floats and sinkers	119 - 134
9.	Heat treatment and net preservation methods (rotting and fouling resistance)	135 - 147
10.	Standardization of fishing gear (ingenious and improved gear, monofilament gillnets and long lines mechanization, deck arrangements and boats)	148 - 163
11.	Past, present and future fishing techniques	166 - 178
	Appendixes (Table 1-45)	179 - 223
	References	225 - 229

Misaki International Fisheries Training Center. Overseas Technical Cooperation Agency, Textbook II. 1970 Tokyo, Overseas Technical Cooperation Agency, 67 p., figs., tables

——→ Processing

Nair, R.V., 1973 Indian sardines, their biology and fishery. New Delhi, CSIR Information Directorate, Zool.Monogr.Counc.Sci.Ind.Res., India, (2):107 p.

——→ Biology

Nédélec, C. (ed.), 1975 FAO catalogue of small-scale fishing gear. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 191 p., figs., tables

Pages

Foreword

Mode of presentation

Appendixes

1. Abbreviations and symbols
2. Equivalents and conversions
3. Trade names of synthetic fibres
4. Examples of common netting yarns
5. Cutting rates and taper ratios
6. Hanging ratio
7. Examples of synthetic fibre ropes
8. Glossary of fishing gear terms

Designs and specifications		33 - 38
1.	Surrounding nets	40 - 53
2.	Seine nets	54 - 65
3.	Trawls	66 - 88
4.	Dredges	89 - 91
5.	Liftnets	92 - 103
6.	Castnets	104 - 105
7.	Gillnet and entangling nets	106 - 129
8.	Traps (also stownets and veranda net)	130 - 155
9.	Hooks-and-lines	156 - 187
10.	Scoop nets	188 - 191

Noel, H.S. and A. Bowbeer (eds.), Fisherman's manual. London, World Fishing, 126 p., figs.
1976

		Pages
1.	Trawling and the trawler: glossary	1 - 4
2.	The trawl and how it works	5 - 8
3.	Otter boards	9 - 12
4.	The trawler, an outline of the type (side trawlers, shooting and hauling)	13 - 18
5.	Stern trawlers (handling the gear)	19 - 26
6.	Pelagic and semi-pelagic trawling	27 - 32
7.	Double-rig trawling (electric trawls)	33 - 38
8.	The processing deck	39 - 42
9.	Inshore trawling (multipurpose vessels)	43 - 48
10.	Seine netting	49 - 53
11.	Purse seining (Tuna purse seining; Fishing for conversion to fishmeal-industrial fishing)	54 - 62
12.	Ring netting	63 - 64
13.	Fishing with light	65 - 67
14.	Set netting (poundnets, gillnets, tangle nets, fishing over wrecks)	68 - 72
15.	Line fishing (pole fishing, trolling, jigging, long lining, baiting machines, mechanized longlining)	73 - 78
16.	Shellfishing (boats and gear, creels and pots, dredging for scallops, suction dredging, hydraulic clam digging, scampi)	79 - 84
17.	Fish-finding	85 - 92
18.	Care of the catch	93 - 96
19.	Deck machinery (winches, power block, hauling devices, tension measuring)	97 - 102
20.	Ropes, knots and net mending	103 - 112

(The following chapters give elementary guidance on some of the aspects of general seamanship which will help the young fisherman to become a useful and fully integrated member of the crew.)

21.	In the wheelhouse (compass, charts, radio navigation)	113 - 122
22.	Safety at sea (liferafts, importance of avoiding submarine cables)	123 - 126

Nomura, M. and T. Yamazaki, Fishing techniques. Compilation of transcript of lectures presented at the
1975 training department, SEAFDEC. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 206 p., figs., tables

The published lectures are given in connexion with the following items of the curriculum of the training department:

		Pages
F2	Fisheries in general	
2.1	Description of fisheries	1 - 2
2.2	Fishing gear and method	2 - 27
2.3	Fishing ground, port and season	27 - 31
2.4	Fishing of the world	31 - 35
F3	Fishing gear and method	
3.1	Net and rope materials	39 - 40
3.2	Net and rope composition	40 - 53
3.3	Net designing	53 - 68
3.4	Trawl fishing	69 - 125
3.5	Purse seining fishing	125 - 138
3.6	Tuna long line fishing	138 - 140
3.7	Gill net fishing	140 - 150
3.8	Other fishing gears and miscellaneous important points (pound nets, light fishing, squid angling)	150 - 171
F4	Fishing boat	
4.1	Characteristics of fishing boat	175 - 196
4.2	Description of each type of fishing boat	196 - 199
F5	Fish behaviour against gear	
5.1	Fish behaviour	203 - 206

Oliver, R.C., 1975. Trawlermen's handbook. Compiled for the U.K. Trawlers Mutual Insurance Co. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 248 p., 133 figs., 5 colour plates, 4 black and white plates 2nd rev.ed.

		Pages
1.	Distress and life-saving in trawlers	1 - 5
2.	Stranding and life-saving in Icelandic waters	6 - 13
3.	Inflatable life-rafts	14 - 19
4.	Living in the raft	20 - 24
5.	Navigational instruments and appliances	25 - 38
6.	Radio communication equipment and radio navigation aids	39 - 48
7.	The international code of signals	49 - 52
8.	Bends and hitches	53 - 61
9.	Knots and splices	62 - 68
10.	Tackles	69 - 73
11.	Slings and spans	74 - 77
12.	Anchors and cables	78 - 85
13.	Rigging and working trawl gear	86 - 93
14.	Dan buoys	94 - 96
15.	Care of the fish	97 - 98
16.	Rules of the road	99 - 121
17.	Uniform system of maritime buoyage	122 - 125
18.	Tides and tidal streams	126 - 130
19.	Charts and publications	131 - 135
20.	Navigation	136 - 140
21.	Astronomical navigation	141 - 144
22.	Radio navigation	145 - 147
23.	Practical fixing - coastal	148 - 154
24.	Trawlers - officer of the watch at sea	155 - 161
25.	Trawlers - officer of the watch at harbour	162 - 166
26.	Trawlers - ship handling	167 - 178
27.	Meteorology	179 - 188

28.	Fire prevention and fire fighting	189 - 200
29.	Ship stability	201 - 208
30.	Emergencies at sea	209 - 220
31.	Navigation in the river Humber	221 - 222
	Index	223 - 228

Royce, W.F., 1972 Introduction to the fishery sciences. New York and London, Academic Press, 351 p., figs., tables

→ Biology

Russell-Hunter, H.D., 1970 Aquatic productivity: an introduction to some basic aspects of biological oceanography and limnology. New York, Macmillan, 306 p.

→ Environment

Sainsbury, J.C., 1971 Commercial fishing methods, an introduction to vessels and gears. London, Fishing News (Books), 119 p., 114 figs.

		Pages
	Introduction	11 - 15
1.	Towed and dragged gear	17
1.1	Bottom otter trawling	17 - 49
1.2	Bottom bait trawling	49 - 50
1.3	Multi-tig trawling	50 - 56
1.4	Midwater trawling	57 - 62
1.5	Dredging	62 - 68
2.	Encircling gear	69
2.1	Purse seining	69 - 85
2.2	Seine netting	85 - 93
3.	Static gear	94
3.1	Gillnets	94 - 99
3.2	Traps	99 - 100
3.3	Longlines	100 - 107
3.4	Pots	108 - 113
4.	Other mobile gear	114
4.1	Trolling	114 - 115
4.2	Harpooning	115 - 117
4.3	Pole and line	117 - 118
	References	119

Schärfe, J., 1969 The German one-boat mid-water trawl. Reprinted from a series of articles published in "Fishing News International" July-December 1969, 29 p., 32 figs., 1 table. Reprints available from the author, FAO, Rome

	Pages
1. History of the development of mid-water trawl in Germany 1959-1968	2 - 6
2. Fishing conditions for the herring and other species	7 - 10
3. Fishing vessels and the trawl gear	11 - 15
4. Trawl net sizes and designs	16 - 19
5. Echo sounding techniques	20 - 24
6. Fishing tactics and large catches	25 - 29
References	29

Shigueno, K., 1974 Shrimp culture in Japan. Tokyo, Japan Publications Trading Co., 153 p., 90 black and white figs., 43 tables

→ Aquaculture

Sinha, V.R.P. and J.W. Jones, 1975 The European freshwater eel. Liverpool, Liverpool University Press, 146 p., 17 figs., sketches in the text, 24 tables

→ Biology

Stewart, R., 1971 A living from lobsters. London, Fishing News (Books), 67 p., 17 figs.

	Pages
1. My kind of creel (construction of the gear)	11 - 19
2. Finding a ground	20 - 25
3. My method of working (number of creels, baiting, setting, lifting, handling and marketing the catch)	26 - 40
4. The boat, selection and maintenance	41 - 53
5. Propulsion hazards, prevention and cure	54 - 60
6. Weather lore	61 - 66
Conclusion	67

Popular

Syme, J.D., 1949 Fish and fish inspection. London, H.K. Lewis & Co., 162 p., 90 figs., tables

→ Processing

Tait, R.V., 1972 Elements of marine ecology: an introduction course. London, Butterworth & Co., 314 p., figs., tables

→ Environment

Thomson, D.B., The seine net, its origin, evolution and use. London, Fishing News (Books), 192 p.,
1969 144 figs., 24 tables

		Pages
1.	History and development	1 - 33
2.	Anchor-dragging, the Danish method	34 - 53
3.	Tow-dragging, the Japanese method	54 - 68
4.	Fly-dragging, the Scottish method	69 - 82
5.	Techniques used in fly-dragging	83 - 99
6.	Seine net gear	100 - 128
7.	Vessels and equipment	129 - 152
8.	Australian, Canadian and American modifications to the gear	153 - 170
9.	Costs and earnings of seine net vessels	171 - 184
	Bibliography	185 - 186
	Index	187 - 192

Tiews, K. (ed.), Proceedings of the International Seminar on fisheries resources and their management
1976 in Southeast Asia. Berlin, 19 November - 6 December, 1974. Organized by the German Foundation for International Development in cooperation with the Federal Research Board of Fisheries and FAO, Bonn, Druckerei Heinz Lammerich, 522 p., figs., tables

→ Economics

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 579 p.,
1955 604 figs., 80 tables (1st FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Paris 1953)

→ Fishing vessels

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 2. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 781 p.,
1960 800 figs., 191 tables (2nd FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Rome 1959)

→ Fishing vessels

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 3. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 648 p.,
1967 figs., tables (3rd FAO World Fishing Boat Congress, Gothenburg 1965)

→ Fishing vessels

Vibert, R. (ed.), Fishing with electricity, its application to biology and management. London, Fishing
1967 News (Books), 276 p., 93 figs., 17 tables

		Pages
	General report of the working party	
1.	Vibert, R., Applications of electricity to inland fishery biology and management	3 - 51

Symposium papers: Electrophysiology of fish

2. Halsband, E., Basic principles of electric fishing 57 - 64
3. Lamarque, P., Electrophysiology of fish subject to the action of an electric field 65 - 92
4. Blancheteau, M., Contribution to the study of taxis in interrupted and alternating currents (Electric fishing practice and questions connected with the efficiency) 93 - 100
5. Hofstede, A.E., Electric fishing devices used in the Netherlands in still waters 103 - 113
6. Hartley, W.G., Electric fishing methods and apparatus in the United Kingdom 114 - 124
7. Brushek, E., Investigations of conductivity for electric fishing in Austrian streams 125 - 130
8. Cuinat, R., Contribution to the study of physical parameters in electrical fishing in rivers with direct current 131 - 173
9. Hartley, W.G., P. Lamarque and J.A. Timmermanns, Measurement of efficiency in electric fishing (Electric screens and guides) 174 - 180
10. Hartley, W.G. and D. Simpson, Electric fish screens in the United Kingdom 183 - 197
11. Halsband, E., Electric installations for blocking or guiding fish in fresh water 198 - 201
12. Chmielewski, A., Study of reactions and behaviour of fish in a heterogeneous field with single and multiphase current 202 - 221
13. Chmielewski, A., Three-phase electric screen type M6, for very large installations 222 - 247

Miscellaneous

14. Hartley, W.G., Electronarcosis of fish for handling 251 - 255
15. Shentiakov, V.A., Annotated bibliography of Soviet literature on electric fishing 256 - 267

References and films 268 - 271

Index 272 - 276

Ward, G. (ed.), Stern trawling. London, Fishing News (Books), 102 p., figs. 1964

Pages

1. Hall, M.J.W., Problems of a trawler owner 1 - 2
2. Heinsohn, H., Stern trawler design 3 - 8
3. Moller, S., Norwegian experiments with stern trawlers 12 - 21
4. Augustin, Normand A., Stern trawlers built in France 22 - 24
5. Marr, G.A., Experiences with the Junella (U.K.) 28 - 30
6. Sealy, D.E., Experiences with the Fairtrys 31 - 34
7. Corlett, E.C.B., Fisheries development and its effect on the design of small vessels 38 - 43
8. Sinclair, J.F., The trawler of the future 44 - 46

Stern trawlers of the world 65 - 82

FISHING VESSELS

Design, building and maintenance; mechanization equipment, engines, deck arrangements and auxiliary machinery; navigation, automation and electronic equipments

Burgess, J.(ed.), 1964 Mechanization of small fishing craft. London, Fishing News (Books), 112 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Installation and operation of outboard motors	1
1.1	Traung, J.-O., The impact of outboard mechanization on developing fisheries	3 - 8
1.2	Chidambaran, K., Development of mechanized fleets in Indo-Pacific fisheries	9 - 14
1.3	Burgess, J., Outboards in tropical fisheries	15 - 18
1.4	Traung, J.-O., Overcoming problems on boat designs servicing and fuel costs	19 - 24
2.	Inboard engines in open craft	25
2.1	Gurtner, P., Phases in the transition to mechanized vessels	25 - 27
2.2	Design considerations I and II	29 - 34
2.3	Traung, J.-O., Open fishing craft with inboard engines	35 - 46
2.4	Kvaran, E., Selection of marine engines under 50 hp Fundamental considerations and economic factors	38 - 59
2.5	Estlander, E., Engine beds for small fishing boats	60 - 64
3.	Inboard engines in decked craft	65
3.1	Traung, J.-O., Problems with small decked fishing craft	65 - 72
3.2	Orchard, W.D., Development in Hong Kong	73 - 76
3.3	Takayama, S. and Z.G. Kim, Transition in Japan and Korea	77 - 79
3.4	Traung, J.-O., Efficient propellor selection	80 - 88
4.	Problems of engine service and maintenance	
4.1	Kvaran, E., Seven conditions to ensure smooth running	89 - 91
4.2	Burgess, J., Fuels and lubricants for small engines	94 - 98
4.3	Progress in design engines	99 - 104
4.4	Svenstrom, L., The marine engine and effects of climate	105 - 108
4.5	Traung, J.-O., Some parameters for plotting fishing craft power	109 - 112

Central Institute of Fisheries Operatives, 1973 Operator's handbook on electronic equipments used on board fishing vessels. Cochin, CIFO, 48 p., 21 figs.

	Pages
Introduction	1 - 2
1. Equipment aiding in fish detection (echo sounder, sonar, net recorder)	2 - 31
2. Radio communication systems	31 - 37
3. Radio aids to navigation (Radio direction finder; marine radar)	37 - 41

Chapelle, H.I., Boatbuilding. A complete handbook of wooden boat construction. London, George Allen & Unwin, 624 p., 186 figs., 58 plates
1941

	Pages
Introduction	19 - 23
1. Plans	25 - 71
2. Lofting	72 - 141
3. The backbone setting-up	142 - 215
4. Flat-bottom hull construction	216 - 271
5. V-bottom hull construction	272 - 347
6. Round-bottom hull construction	348 - 440
7. Lap-strake, and other construction methods	441 - 488
8. Joinerwork, plumbing, installation, sparmaking and finishing	489 - 587
9. Tools and care, professional building	588 - 607
Index	609 - 624

Fyson, J.F., Building a sawn frame fishing boat. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (96):54 p., 6 plates, 41 figs.
1970

	Pages
1. How to read and understand boat drawings	1
1.1 Drawing conventions	1
1.2 Boat plans and what they show	1 - 5
2. Lofting the lines to full size	5
2.1 Introduction	5
2.2 Mold loft floor	5
2.3 Battens	5 - 6
2.4 The grid	6
2.5 The offset table	6 - 7
2.6 The profile	7
2.7 The deckline in plan	7 - 8
2.8 Sections	8 - 9
2.9 Waterlines	9 - 10
2.10 Buttocks	10
2.11 Transom projection	11
3. Pattern making and backbone construction	11
3.1 Introduction	11
3.2 Rabbet and boarding lines	11 - 12
3.3 Backbone patterns	12
3.4 Backbone construction	12 - 13
3.5 Frame patterns	13 - 14
4. Double sawn frame construction	14
4.1 Introduction	14
4.2 Futtock and floor layout - square frames	14 - 15
4.3 Layout for half frames	15
4.4 Frame assembly	15 - 16
5. Setting up and general construction details	16
5.1 Setting up	16 - 17
5.2 General construction details	17 - 19

Fyson, J.F., Construction of a 16-metre ferro-cement fishing boat. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., 1970 (95): 53 p., 58 figs., 7 drawings, tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Design	2 - 4
3.	Construction	4
3.1	Lofting	4
3.2	Bending of keel, stem and pipe frames	4
3.3	Setting up	6
3.4	Placing of reinforcing rods	6 - 12
3.5	Tying of the mesh layers	12
3.6	Floors and bulkheads	19
3.7	Decks and hatches	19 - 24
3.8	Plastering	24 - 27
3.9	Curing and painting	27 - 30
3.10	Fish hold insulation	30
3.11	Engine installation	30
3.12	Fitting out	30 - 35
3.13	Hull repairs	35
4.	Trials	42 - 46
5.	Cost analysis	47
5.1	Major items and their costs	47 - 48
5.2	Detailed analysis of material quantities and costs	48 - 50
5.3	Cost estimating	50 - 51
	Conclusions	51 - 53

Fyson, J. (ed.), FAO investigates ferro-cement fishing craft. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News 1974 (Books), 200 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Material properties	17
1.1	Buchner, T.E., The intensity and distribution of cracking in ferro-cement panels subject to flexure	17 - 22
1.2	Pedersen, H.-P., Dynamic point loading of ferro-cement glass fibre-reinforced polyester and plywood	22 - 27
1.3	Kowalski, T.G. and B.R. Walkus, Concrete technology in the quality control of ferro-cement vessels	27 - 32
1.4	Shah, S.Q. and N.G. Srinivasan, Strength and cracking of ferro-cement	33 - 40
1.5	Lee, S.L., M. Raisingham and R.P. Pama, Mechanical properties of ferro-cement	40 - 50
1.6	Ellen, P.E., Practical ferro-cement design reinforced and post-tensioned	50 - 60
1.7	Bigg, G.H., Definition of ferro-cement	60 - 71
1.8	Moar, H.M., Ferro-cement, the design of its properties for marine usage	71 - 74
1.9	Discussions	75 - 80
2.	Scantlings and regulations	81
2.1	Scrivener, J.C. and A.J. Carr, Ferro-cement boat hulls analysed by the finite element methods	81 - 89
2.2	Bowen, G.L., Estimation of design loads	89 - 96
2.3	Discussions	96 - 106

3. Construction methods and costs 107

3.1 Lernard, P.A., Construction, maintenance and repair of a 26-metre ferro-cement stern trawler 107
3.2 Noble, P. and L. Cleaver, Ferro-cement vessels on the Pacific coast of North America 112 - 119
3.3 Nontanakorn, D., Construction of a 32-metre ferro-cement barge and other applications of ferro-cement 120 - 123
3.4 Sutherland, W.M., Ferro-cement boats, commercial production methods in New Zealand 123 - 126
3.5 Behnke, R.W. and E.C. Doleman, Use of a cavity mould for constructing 15-metre ferro-cement fishing boats 127 - 134
3.6 Carkeek, G., The use of kit-sets for amateur construction 134 - 136
3.7 Pickett, D.C. and J.C. Black, Explosive moulding of ferro-cement 136 - 138
3.8 Hermanson, H.E., A construction technique using precast spans 139 - 146
3.9 Hunt, P.B., Protection and finishing ferro-cement hulls 146 - 149
3.10 Fyson, J.F., Ø. Gulbrandsen and A.F. Haug, Ferro-cement fishing vessel designed by FAO 150 - 159
3.11 Gulbrandsen, Ø., Weight and cost estimates for small fishing vessels 159 - 166
3.12 Tayab, M.A.K., The cost of ferro-cement boat construction in India 166 - 168
3.13 Discussion 169 - 179

4. Service experience

4.1 Eyres, D.J., Survey of ferro-cement fishing boats built in New Zealand 180 - 186
4.2 Hagenbach, T.M., Experience of 300 commercially built craft in more than 20 countries 186 - 190
4.3 Sutherland, W.M., Ferro-cement boats, service experience in New Zealand 190 - 194
4.4 Discussion 194 - 200

References at the end of each chapter

Great Britain, Department of Trade, Survey of fishing vessels: instructions for the guidance of surveyors. London, H.M.S.O., 1975 371 p.

		Pages
1.	General	1 - 5
2.	Surveys, general principles	6 - 20
3.	Watertight integrity	21 - 27
4.	Stability requirements	28 - 46
5.	Boilers and machinery	47 - 131
6.	Bilge pumping arrangements	133 - 136
7.	Electrical equipment and installations	137 - 141
8.	Miscellaneous plant and equipment	142 - 148
9.	Structural fire protection arrangements	149 - 169
10.	Protection of the crew	170 - 171
11.	Nautical equipment	172 - 183
12.	Life-saving appliances	184 - 307
13.	Survey of fire appliances	308 - 352
14.	Musters and drills	353 - 354

Index 355 - 371

Gulbrandsen, Ø., Fishing boat designs: 2. V-bottom. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (134):22 p.
1974 24 plates, tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Selection of design	2
2.1	The importance of economic factors	2
2.2	Break-even analysis	2
2.3	Increasing the catch	2
2.4	Outboard or inboard power	3
2.5	Selecting the right size	3
3.	Selection of construction method	3
3.1	Plywood construction	3
3.2	Planked construction	3
3.3	Fastenings	4
4.	Tools for a small boatyard	4
4.1	Personal hand tools	4
4.2	Hand tools in common	4 - 5
4.3	Power tools	5
5.	Drawings and material specification	5
5.1	Drawing sequence	5 - 6
5.2	Material specifications	6 - 19
6.	Engine specification	20 - 22
Drawings		23 - 46

Haug, A.F. (Comp.), Fishing boat designs: 1. Flat bottom boats. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap.,
1974 (117):44 p., 28 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Building procedure	2
3.	Selection of timber	3
4.	Selection of fastenings	3
5.	Drawings of small flat boats	4
5.1	4.90 m flat bottom boat	7 - 10
5.2	5.10 m flat bottom canoe	11 - 14
5.3	5.40 m flat bottom boat	15 - 22
5.4	5.94 m flat bottom boat	23 - 26
5.5	6.80 m flat bottom canoe	27 - 30
5.6	8.23 m flat bottom boat	31 - 34
5.7	8.43 m transport boat	35 - 38
5.8	11.25 m transport boat	39 - 44

Henshall, S.H., 1972 Medium and high speed diesel engines for marine use. London, Institute of Marine Engineers, 411 p., figs., tables

		Pages
	Introduction	1
1.	Fundamental thermodynamics	5 - 17
2.	Performance parameters and rating	18 - 38
3.	Gas exchange processes and scavenging	39 - 65
4.	Combustion and fuel injection	66 - 94
5.	Thermal loads	95 - 109
6.	Mechanical loads, inertia, balancing and bearings	110 - 135
7.	Crankshafts and shaft alignment	136 - 152
8.	Some important details	153 - 169
9.	Fuels and lubricants	170 - 183
10.	Flow systems	184 - 203
11.	Propulsion machinery	204 - 219
12.	Introduction to vibration and noise	220 - 234
13.	An introduction to torsional vibration	235 - 251
14.	Governing and speed regulation	252 - 265
15.	Surveillance systems and sequential controls	266 - 281
16.	Some medium speed engines	282 - 347
17.	Some high speed engines	348 - 373
18.	Air cooled engines	374 - 385
19.	Some turbochargers	386 - 400
	Index	401 - 411

References and bibliography at the end of each chapter

Hind, J.A., 1967 Stability and trim of fishing vessels for skippers and second hands. London, Fishing News (Books), 120 p., 32 figs., 4 plates, 1 table

		Pages
	Board of Trade Examination of skippers and second hands of fishing boats	11 - 13
1.	First principles	17 - 22
2.	Initial or metacentric stability	23 - 32
3.	The inclining experiment	33 - 36
4.	Inertia and free surfaces	37 - 42
5.	Stability of large angles	43 - 57
6.	Trim	58 - 64
7.	Docking and grounding	69 - 73
8.	Dynamical stability and motion in a seaway	74 - 88
9.	Stability after damage	89 - 94
10.	Stability information aboard ships	95 - 99
	Formulae and approximations	100 - 102
	Appendixes	
1.	Change in draft due to change in density	103
2.	Moment of inertia of a waterplane about ships for-and-aft centreline	104 - 105
3.	Formula BM	106 - 107
4.	Moment to change trim	108 - 109
5.	Displacement correction for trim	110
6.	Int. Co-operation in stability studies	111 - 112
7.	Some suggestions for preserving safe stability	113 - 114
8.	Determination of ship's stability by means of the rolling period test	115 - 117
	Index	119 - 120

Hjul, P. (ed.), The stern trawler. London, Fishing News (Books), 221 p., figs.
1972

		Pages
1.	Hjul, P., Introduction	1 - 2
2.	Eddie, G.C. and D.D. Chaplin, The development of the modern stern trawler	3 - 29
3.	Kerr, N.M., Mechanisation of trawl gear handling aboard shelter-deck stern trawlers in the Atlantic fisheries (also mechanical gutting)	30 - 86
4.	Waterman, J.J., Handling and processing the catch in stern trawlers	87 - 121
5.	Burgess, J., Notable small stern trawlers	122 - 139
6.	Hjul, P., Shelter-deck stern trawlers built since 1963	140
	6.1 Canada	140 - 144
	6.2 France	144 - 150
	6.3 East Germany	150 - 153
	6.4 West Germany	153 - 157
	6.5 Italy	157 - 160
	6.6 Japan	160 - 166
	6.7 The Netherlan	166 - 168
	6.8 Norway	168 - 176
	6.9 Poland	176 - 179
	6.10 South Africa	179 - 183
	6.11 Spain	183 - 191
	6.12 United Kingdom	192 - 203
	6.13 U.S.S.R.	203 - 209
	6.14 Stern trawler-type research ships	204 - 213
	6.15 Other countries	213 - 221

References at the end of each chapter

Howell, F.S., Navigation primer for fishermen. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 180 p., 131
1976 figs., 22 tables

		Pages
1.	The compass	1 - 19
2.	Charts and navigational publications	20 - 39
3.	Chartwork	40 - 53
4.	The sextant	54 - 68
5.	Use of traverse tables. Plane and Mercator sailing	69 - 83
6.	Nautical astronomy (1)	84 - 104
7.	Nautical astronomy (2)	105 - 113
8.	Ship stability	114 - 123
9.	Miscellaneous (Barometer, clouds, buoyage and wreck marking, navigational marks, light vessels, Lanby buoys)	124 - 152

Appendix

Bibliography	153
Useful addresses in U.K.	153
Tables	154 - 175

Index 176 - 180

IMCO, Inter-governmental Maritime Consultative Organization, Code of safety for fishermen and fishing
1975 vessels. London, IMCO:

Part A: Safety and health practice for skippers and crew. London, IMCO, 108 p., figs., tables
Part B: Safety and health, requirements for the construction and equipment of fishing vessels. London, IMCO, 158 p., figs., tables

→ Safety and health

India, Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agricultural
1951 Marketing in India, Preliminary guide to Indian fish fisheries, methods of fishing and curing. Delhi, Manager of Publications, Government of India, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (66):137 p., 66 plates

→ Biology

Institute of Marine Engineers (ed.), The running and maintenance of marine machinery. London,
1972 Institute of Marine Engineers, 285 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Milton, J.H., The care and maintenance of marine boilers	1 - 59
2.	Baker, L., revised by G.H. Chambers, The combustion of fuel in marine boilers	60 - 77
3.	Munton, R., The running and maintenance of steam reciprocating machinery	78 - 91
4.	Smith, S.A., The running and maintenance of marine steam turbines	92 - 116
5.	Savage, A.N., The running and maintenance of marine electrical machinery	117 - 162
6.	Cromarty, R.W., The running and maintenance of marine diesel engines	163 - 205
7.	Ranken, M.B.F. and E.G. Russell-Roberts, The running and maintenance of marine refrigerating plant	206 - 228
8.	Hutchinson, R.C., Pumping arrangements	229 - 246
9.	Buchanan, G. and D. Gray, Steering gears	247 - 262
10.	Victory, G., Fire fighting equipment and its use in ships	263 - 285

Klingel, G.C., Boatbuilding with steel, including Boatbuilding with Aluminium by T. Calvin. Camden,
1973 Maine, International Marine Publishing Co., figs., 3 tables

		Pages
	Introduction	3 - 6
1.	Steel	7 - 15
2.	Advantages and disadvantages of steel	16 - 26
3.	Tools and equipment	27 - 47
4.	Design and construction considerations	48 - 65
5.	Laying down the lines	66 - 75
6.	Fabricating the keel and framing	76 - 95
7.	Torch cutting and welding	96 - 110
8.	Setting up the keel and framing	111 - 123
9.	Plating	124 - 142
10.	Finishing the hull	143 - 162
11.	Corrosion, prevention, painting	163 - 186
12.	Finishing art	187 - 203
13.	Calvin, T., Boatbuilding with Aluminium	204 - 243
	Index	245 - 248

Lamb, J., 1950 Questions and answers on the marine diesel engine. London, Charles Griffin & Co., 432 p.

		Pages
1.	Matter and heat	1 - 16
2.	Work and efficiency	17 - 30
3.	Internal combustion engines	31 - 49
4.	Fuels and storage tanks	50 - 69
5.	Combustion of fuel	70 - 97
6.	High-pressure fuel pumps and speed governors	98 - 129
7.	Fuel injection valves	130 - 158
8.	Air inlet and exhaust valves	159 - 183
9.	Scavenging and supercharging	184 - 209
10.	Pistons and piston rings	210 - 230
11.	Cylinder liners and jackets	231 - 259
12.	Crankshafts and thrust bearings	260 - 273
13.	Connecting rods, crossheads and piston rods	274 - 293
14.	Bearings and lubrication	294 - 311
15.	Starting and reversing	312 - 327
16.	Air compressors and air storage tanks	328 - 348
17.	Other diesel engine parts	349 - 360
18.	Vibration in diesel engines	361 - 383
19.	Miscellaneous questions and answers	384 - 408
Appendix		
	Extracts from Regulations Relating to Examination of Engineers in the Mercantile Marine	409 - 414
Index		415 - 434

Maconachie, W. (ed.), 1976 Marine electronics for fishing. London, World Fishing, 73 p.

		Pages
1.	Radar	9 - 21
2.	Communications	22
2.1	Receivers	22 - 23
2.2	Transmitters	24 - 25
2.3	MF/HF radiotelephones	26 - 32
2.4	VHF	32 - 36
2.5	Portable survival equipment	37 - 38
3.	Navigation aids	39
3.1	Direction finders	39 - 40
3.2	Decca navigator	41
3.3	Loran	41 - 44
3.4	Omega	44 - 47
3.5	Weather chart facsimile receivers	48
4.	Echosounders	49
4.1	Flashing or digital	49
4.2	Recording	50 - 60
4.3	Combined flashing/recording	61
4.4	Scope scale expanders	62 - 63
4.5	Netzondes	64 - 66
5.	Sonars	67 - 72

Lamoureux, V.B., Guide to ship sanitation. Geneva, World Health Organization, 119 p., 51 figs., tables
1967

→ Safety and health

Noel, H.S. and A. Bowbeer (eds.), Fisherman's manual. London, World Fishing, 126 p., figs.
1976

→ Fishing

Oliver, R.C., Trawlermen's handbook. London, Fishing News (Books), 228 p., 133 figs., 5 colour plates,
1965 4 black and white plates

→ Fishing

Sainsbury, J.C., Commercial fishing methods, an introduction to vessels and gears. London, Fishing
1971 News (Books), 119 p., 114 figs.

→ Fishing

Scott, R.J., Fiberglass boat design and construction. Tuckahoe, New York, John de Graff, 144 p.,
1973 49 figs., 7 tables

		Pages
I.	Introduction	7
II.	Fiberglass as a boatbuilding material	9 - 14
III.	History of fiberglass boat construction	15 - 17
IV.	Basic fiberglass materials	19 - 29
V.	Structural concepts	31 - 37
VI.	Designing with fiberglass	43 - 109
VII.	Construction of fiberglass boats	111 - 128
VIII.	Economics	129 - 134
IX.	Maintenance and repair	135 - 138
	References	139 - 141
	Index	143 - 144

Smith, P. de Willard, Modern marine electricity and electronics. Cambridge, Maryland, Cornell
1966 Maritime Press, Inc., 704 p., figs., diagrams, tables

1.	Introduction	32	
2.	A-C and D-C light and power systems	29	
3.	Voltage regulation	36	
4.	Generators	33	
5.	Motors	20	Pages
6.	Motor starting and control equipment	26	
7.	The group control	7	
8.	Deck machinery	78	
9.	Electrical propulsion	69	

10.	Interior communication	137	
11.	The girocompass	52	
12.	The Sperry Gyro-Pilot	49	
13.	Maintenance	77	
14.	Hull corrosion and cathodic protection	12	Pages
15.	Tables and other useful information (terms, conversion factors, formulas, codes, etc.)	17.	
	Index	10	

Steward, R.M., 1969 Boatbuilding manual. Lakeville, Conn., Poseidon Publishing Co., 220 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	General (Introduction)	1 - 6
2.	Plans (for small boats)	6 - 7
3.	Tools (for boatbuilding)	7 - 11
4.	Wood (sawing, seasoning, kinds of wood)	11 - 24
5.	Fibreglass and other materials (wood, steel, aluminium alloys, ferro-cement)	25 - 29
6.	Fastenings	30 - 46
7.	Lines and laying down	47 - 69
8.	Molds, templates and the backbone	70 - 89
9.	Setting up	90 - 98
10.	Framing	99 - 113
11.	Planking	114 - 138
12.	Deck framing	139 - 146
13.	Decking	147 - 155
14.	Deck joinerwork	156 - 162
15.	Interior joinerwork	168 - 180
16.	Miscellaneous details	181 - 215
	Recommended reading	217
	Index	218 - 220

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), 1955 Fishing boats of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 579 p., 604 figs., 80 tables (1st. FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Paris 1953)

		Pages
1.	Boat types	1
1.1	Short distance fishing	1 - 79
1.2	Surface fishing	80 - 121
1.3	Bottom fishing	122 - 186
1.4	Combination fishing	187 - 212
1.5	Research vessels	213 - 222
1.6	Materials (for construction and operation)	223 - 229
1.7	Fish holds	230 - 233
1.8	Economics	234 - 241
1.9	Discussion	242 - 268
2.	Naval architecture	269
2.1	Hull shape	269 - 336
2.2	Safety at sea	337 - 352
2.3	Discussion	353 - 389

3.	Engineering	390
3.1	Engines	390 - 432
3.2	Propulsion	433 - 437
3.3	Control devices	438 - 455
3.4	Discussion (Engine)	456 - 473
3.5	Deck gear	474 - 504
3.6	Discussion	505 - 512
4.	Factory ships (processing vessels, freezer trawlers, factory ship operations, Discussion)	513 - 568
	References	569 - 573
	Index	575 - 579

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 2. London, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 781 p., 1960 800 figs., 191 tables (2nd. FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Rome 1959)

		Pages
1.	Tactics (fishing boat types)	27 - 30
1.1	Fishing methods and deck arrangement (purse seining, drift netting, gillnet fishing, longlining, pole-and-line fishing, trawling, discussions)	31 - 113
1.2	Command of operations	114 - 134
2.	Construction (of vessels)	135
2.1	Scantlings	137 - 187
2.2	New materials	188 - 199
2.3	Fish holds	200 - 260
2.4	Installation of machinery	261 - 319
2.5	Costs of construction	320 - 338
3.	Sea behaviour	339
3.1	Resistance and propulsion	341 - 392
3.2	Seakindliness	393 - 467
3.3	Stability	468 - 504
3.4	Safety at sea	505 - 582
4.	Productivity	583
4.1	Short distance fishing	585 - 614
4.2	Medium distance fishing	615 - 637
4.3	Long distance fishing	638 - 707
4.4	Choice of size and type	708 - 759
	References	761 - 769
	Indices	771 - 781

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 3. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 648 p., 1967 figs., tables (3rd. FAO World Fishing Boat Congress, Gothenburg 1965)

		Pages
1.	Techno-socio-economic boat problems	31 - 82
2.	Performance	83 - 198
3.	Materials (wood, aluminium, fibreglass, plastic)	199 - 316
4.	Engineering (mechanization, outboard engines, engine installation, hydraulic deck machinery, refrigeration in small boats)	317 - 422
5.	Design of small boats (developable hull surface, indigenous small craft, fishing boats in developing countries, arctic vessels, high-speed fishing craft)	423 - 532
6.	Developments (combination fishing vessels, tuna longliners, stern trawlers)	533 - 640
	References	641 - 648

Verney, M., 1954 Amateur boatbuilding. London, John Murray, 218 p., 71 figs., 16 plates, tables

		Pages
	Hard chine construction	
1.	General introduction	1 - 15
2.	First stages in building	16 - 29
3.	Erecting and planking	30 - 46
4.	Miscellaneous jobs and tools	47 - 63
5.	Completing the hard chine runabout	64 - 80
	Round bilge constructions	
6.	Timbers, tools and some useful hints	81 - 97
7.	Building a 3-tonner (1)	98 - 116
8.	Building a 3-tonner (2)	117 - 138
9.	Construction of a larger hull (1)	139 - 153
10.	Construction of a larger hull (2)	154 - 178
	Miscellaneous	
11.	Ventilation and cabin carpentry	179 - 183
12.	Sheathing, ballast, caulking and stopping	184 - 189
13.	A half model	190 - 197
14.	Electrical installation	198 - 210
	Appendix: Tables	211 - 214
	Index	215 - 218

LEGISLATION

National and international laws concerning the territorial seas, marine fisheries, exploitation and pollution; Law of the Sea; bilateral and multilateral agreements regarding exploitation of the seas and sea-beds.

Brown, E.D., 1971 The legal regime of hydrospace. London, Stevens and Sons, 236 p.

	Pages
The boundaries of hydrospace	1
1. The outer limit of the continental shelf	3 - 40
2. Delimitation of the continental shelf between opposite and adjacent states: the North Sea continental shelf areas	41 - 78
The utilization of hydrospace	79
3. The legal regime of deep-sea mining	81 - 123
Environmental protection of hydrospace	125 - 129
4. The prevention of oil pollution	130 - 162
5. Liability for oil pollution	163 - 183
6. Nuclear pollution	184 - 192
7. Marine pollution by other hazardous substances	193 - 211
Appendixes	
a. Status of conventions on law of the sea as at 1 January 1971	212 - 214
b. Bilateral treaties on the continental shelf	215 - 216
c. Biographical notes	217
d. Declaration of principles governing the sea bed and the ocean floor, and the subsoil thereof beyond the limits of national jurisdiction	218 - 220
e. Resolution of Law of Sea Conference	221 - 223
f. Membership of United Nations Committee on the peaceful uses of the sea bed and the ocean floor beyond the limits of national jurisdiction	224 - 226
Indices	227 - 236

University level

Burke, W.T., 1970 Marine science research and international law. Kingston, R.I., University of Rhode Island, Law of the Sea Institute, Occas.Pap.Ser.Univ.R.I.Law Sea Inst., (8):25 p.

	Pages
Introduction	1
I Impediments created by the international legal framework	
A. Internal waters	1 - 3
B. Other areas requiring consent for research	2
1. Division of time, resources and money	3 - 4
2. Deterrence of projects and of requests for clearances	4 - 6
3. Influences upon nature, scope and methods of marine research	6
4. Denials of clearances	7 - 8
5. Indications of private and public international concern	8 - 9
6. The creation of a regime for the deep sea bed	10

II Remedial measures

A. Multilateral agreement 11

1. General agreement on a convention on scientific research in the ocean 11 - 12
2. General agreement as a procedure to facilitate scientific research in the ocean 12 - 17
3. Regional arrangements 17 - 18

B. Bilateral agreements 18 - 19

C. Unilateral action by the United States 19 - 23

D. A new law of the sea (LOS) Conference: negotiations about marine science 23

1. Revision or replacement of the continental shelf convention 23 - 25
2. Legislation of scientific research on the sea-bed beyond national jurisdiction or control 25 - 30

Conclusion 31 - 32

Footnotes 33 - 36

Appendix

Resolution: Promoting fundamental scientific research 37 - 39

University level

Dupuy, R.J., The law of the sea: current problems. Dobbs Ferry, N.Y., Oceana Publications, 1974 210 p.

Pages

1. General problems 1

1.1 Contradictions in the law of the sea 3 - 23
1.2 The common heritage of mankind for development 24 - 45
1.3 National appropriation of maritime areas 46 - 101

2. Sea-bed problems 103

2.1 The exclusive use of the sea-bed for peaceful purposes 105 - 120
2.2 The present and the possible future regimes for the sea-bed, the living resources of the sea-bed and their protection against pollution caused by exploitation of the sea-bed resources 121 - 136
2.3 Legal aspects of the development of the mineral resources of the continental shelf 137 - 157

3. Regional problems 159

3.1 The effect of existing law of the sea planning for the development of the Mediterranean regions as an ecological unity 161 - 178
3.2 National legislation 179 - 192
3.3 Towards a Caribbean regional regime 193 - 200

Selective bibliography of recent publications 201 - 210

FAO, 1974 FAO/SIDA Training Course on marine pollution in relation to protection of living resources. Gothenburg 1972. Lectures presented at the first FAO/SIDA training course on marine pollution in relation to protection of living resources. Supplement to the report. Rome, FAO/SIDA/TF 95 Suppl., 372 p., figs. and tables

→ Pollution

Johnston, D.M. (ed.), 1976 Marine pollution. London and New York, Academic Press, 729 p., figs. and tables

→ Pollution

Koers, A.W., 1973 International regulation of marine fisheries. A study of regional fisheries organizations. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 368 p.

		Pages
	Introductory remarks	15 - 21
1.	The constitutive elements of the international law of marine fisheries	23 - 76
2.	A chronology of international fisheries organizations	77 - 118
3.	The structure of international fisheries organizations	119 - 169
4.	The functions and powers of international fisheries organizations	171 - 228
5.	Alternatives and proposals: a discussion	229 - 277
6.	The future of international law of marine fisheries: a proposal	279 - 323
	Final remarks	325 - 329
	Appendixes	
a.	Convention for the establishment of a world marine fisheries organization	331 - 339
b.	Convention for the establishment of a regional fisheries commission for the Southwest Pacific Ocean	340 - 346
	Bibliography	347 - 361
	Index	362 - 368

Mackintosh, N.A., 1965 The stocks of whales. London, Fishing News (Books), 232 p., 25 figs. and 47 photographs on 20 plates

→ Biology

McDougal, M.S. and W.T. Burke, 1962 The public order of the oceans. New Haven and London, Yale University Press, 1226 p.

		Pages
1.	Community context and fundamental policies	1 - 88
2.	Claims to authority and international waters	89 - 173
3.	Claims to authority over the territorial seas	174 - 304
4.	Claims to delimit the boundary between international waters and territorial sea	305 - 445
5.	Claims to determine the width of the territorial sea	446 - 564

6. Claims to authority in ocean areas adjacent to the territorial sea 565 - 729
7. Claims to shared use and competence upon the high seas 730 - 1007
8. The maintenance of the public order of the oceans and the nationality of ships 1008 - 1140

Appendixes

a. Convention on the territorial sea and the contiguous zone 1143 - 1152
b. Convention on the high seas 1153 - 1163
c. Convention on fishing and conservation of the living resources of the high seas 1164 - 1172
d. Convention on the continental shelf 1173 - 1177
e. Ratifications and concessions to the conventions 1178 - 1179
f. Declarations and reservations to the conventions 1180 - 1191

Table of cases 1193 - 1194

Indices 1195 - 1226

References in footnotes to each chapter

Oda, S., 1977 The law of the sea in our time. Vol. 1. New developments, 1966-1975. Leyden, A.W. Sijthoff, International Publishing Co. B.V. Sijthoff publications on ocean development. Vol. 3:269 p.

Pages

1. The dawn of a régime for the deep ocean floor: 1966 - 1977 1 - 112
2. New developments in the UN Seabed Committee 113 - 144
3. The Law of the Sea Conference: Caracas and Geneva, recent developments present status and future implications 145 - 185
4. New trends in the international law of fisheries 187 - 199
5. Marine pollution and international law 201 - 228
6. Toward a new régime for ocean development, Japan's position 229 - 248
7. Two continental shelf agreements between Japan and the Republic of Korea 249 - 265

Index 267 - 269

University level

Oda, S., 1977 The law of the sea in our time. Vol. 2. The UN Seabed Committee, 1968-73. Leyden, A.W. Sijthoff International Publishing Co. B.V. Sijthoff publications on ocean development. Vol. 4:332 p.

Pages

Prologue 1

I The Maltese proposal 3 - 4
II Deliberations concerning the Maltese proposal 4 - 7
III The establishment of the Ad Hoc Seabed Committee 7
IV Preparation of the Ad Hoc Seabed Committee 8 - 10

The year 1968 11

The Ad Hoc Seabed Committee 13 - 35

The General Assembly, Twenty-third session
(Resolutions on establishment of the Seabed Committee, on prevention of marine pollution, int. decade of ocean exploitation legal principles relating to exploitation of the ocean floor) 36 - 47

The year 1969 49

The Seabed Committee 51 - 80
The General Assembly 81 - 94

The year 1970 95

The Seabed Committee
(also consideration of problems concerning marine pollution: marine pollution and the dumping of nerve gas) 97 - 131
The General Assembly 132 - 151

The year 1971 153

The Seabed Committee 155 - 181
The General Assembly 182 - 184

The year 1972 185

The Seabed Committee 187 - 223
The General Assembly 224 - 230

The year 1973 231

The Seabed Committee 233
Spring session (territorial sea, coastal zone, archipelagos, problem of fisheries, marine pollution) 233 - 258
Summer session (breadth of the territorial sea, prevention of pollution, proposals on archipelagos, land-locked and geographical disadvantaged states, areas beyond the coastal zone, artificial islands and installations) 259 - 314
The General Assembly 316 - 322

Index 323 - 332

University level

Padelford, N.J., 1970 — Public policy for seas. Cambridge, Mass., MIT Press, 338 p., tables, diagrams and 14 illustrations

→ Economics

Ruivo, M. (ed.), 1971 — Pollution, an international problem for fisheries. Rome, FAO, 85 p., 7 figs. and 8 tables

→ Pollution

Ruivo, M. (ed.), 1972 — Marine pollution and sea life. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 624 p., figs. and tables

→ Pollution

Syme, J.D., 1949 Fish and fish inspection. London, H.K. Lewis & Co., 162 p., 90 figs. and tables

→ Processing

United Nations, 1970 National legislation and treaties relating to the territorial sea, the contiguous zone, the continental shelf, the high seas and to fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea. United Nations Legislative Series. New York, United Nations, 931 p.

		Pages
National legislation		
1.	The territorial sea and the contiguous zone	45
1.1	The territorial sea and the contiguous zone	45
1.1.1	Status breadth and delimination of the territorial sea	45 - 134
1.1.2	Navigation through the territorial sea and safety of the ships there	135 - 190
1.1.3	Security of the coastal state	191 - 216
1.1.4	Customs, fiscal and sanitary matters	217 - 244
1.1.5	Criminal and civil jurisdiction over foreign ships in the territorial sea	245 - 253
1.1.6	Status of foreign warships in the territorial sea	254 - 270
1.1.7	Pollution of the territorial sea	271 - 291
1.1.8	Broadcasts from ships in the territorial sea	292 - 297
1.1.9	Exploitation of mineral resources and the laying of cables and pipelines under the territorial sea	298 - 310
1.2	The contiguous zone	311 - 318
2.	The continental shelf	319 - 476
3.	The high seas	477 - 567
4.	Fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea	569 - 710
Treaties		
1.	The territorial sea and the contiguous zone	719
1.1	Multilateral treaties	719 - 745
1.2	Bilateral treaties	747 - 765
2.	The continental shelf	767
2.1	Multilateral treaties	767 - 773
2.2	Bilateral treaties	775 - 785
3.	The high seas	787
3.1	Multilateral treaties	787 - 817
3.2	Bilateral treaties	819
4.	Fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea	821
4.1	Multilateral treaties	821 - 877
4.2	Bilateral treaties	879 - 931
Index and table of contents for national legislation		3 - 43
Index and contents for treaties		713 - 718

United Nations, National legislation and treaties relating to the law of the sea. United Nations
1974 Legislative Series. New York, United Nations, 604 p.

	Pages
National legislation	1
1. The territorial sea and the contiguous zone	3
1.1 The territorial sea	3
1.1.1 Status breadthand delimination of the territorial sea	3 - 40
1.1.2 Navigation through the territorial sea and safety of the ships there	41 - 48
1.1.3 Security of the coastal state	49 - 50
1.1.4 Customs, fiscal and sanitary matters	51 - 52
1.1.5 Criminal and civil jurisdiction over foreign ships in the territorial sea	53 - 54
1.1.6 Status of foreign warships in the territorial sea	55 - 58
1.1.7 Pollution of the territorial sea	59 - 75
1.1.8 Broadcasts from ships in the territorial sea	76
1.1.9 Exploitation of mineral resources and the laying of cables and pipelines under the territorial sea	77 - 114
1.2 The contiguous zone	115 - 116
2. The continental shelf	117 - 180
3. The high seas	181 - 264
4. Fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea	265 - 395
Treaties	397
1. The territorial sea and the contiguous zone	399
1.1 Multilateral treaties	399
1.2 Bilateral treaties	401 - 405
2. The continental shelf	407
2.1 Multilateral treaties	407 - 408
2.2 Bilateral treaties	409 - 432
3. The high seas	433
3.1 Multilateral treaties	433 - 474
3.2 Bilateral treaties	475 - 476
4. Fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea	477
4.1 Multilateral treaties	477 - 491
4.2 Bilateral treaties	493 - 579
Annexes	
Declarations, resolutions and reports	583 - 694

Volkov, A.A., Maritime law. Jerusalem, Israel Program of Scientific Translations, IPST Cat. No. 5797
1971 162 p., 6 figures and one table

	Pages
1. Introduction	3 - 10
2. The sources of maritime law and application of its norms	10 - 19
3. The legal basis of the Soviet fishing industry fleet	19 - 32

4.	The seagoing vessel	32 - 34
5.	Organs for ensuring the observance of laws and regulations concerning navigation and marine fishing	44 - 56
6.	International legal regime of the seas	56 - 84
7.	International legal regulation of fishing and fishery research	85 - 108
8.	Contracts of carriage by sea	108 - 118
9.	General and particular average	118 - 123
10.	Compensation for damage caused by collision of vessels	123 - 125
11.	Rendering of assistance and salvage at sea	126 - 131
12.	The limits of the liability of shipowners	131 - 132
13.	Marine insurance	133 - 135
14.	Litigation and arbitration in maritime cases	135 - 140

Appendixes:

a.	Breadth of territorial waters and special zones of foreign states as of 1 January 1969	141 - 145
b.	Salvage contracts, etc.	146 - 155

University level

NETMAKING AND SEAMANSHIP

Material for netting yarns and ropes; netmaking by hand and with machines; work with ropes and lines; netmending and preparation; cutting rates and their calculation; ISO standards

Andreev, N.N., 1966 Handbook of fishing gear and its rigging. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific Translations, IPST Cat. No. 1654:454 p., 157 figs. and 367 tables

→ Fishing

Baranov, F.I., 1976 Selected works on fishing gear. Vol. I. Commercial fishing techniques. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific Translations, 631 p., 366 figs. and 135 tables

→ Fishing

Blandford, P.W., 1973 Netmaking. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson, 104 p., 55 figs.

		Pages
1.	Tools and materials	11 - 19
2.	Netting sizes and knots	20 - 29
3.	Basic processes (forming a mesh by knotting)	30 - 40
4.	Varying flat net shapes (straight-edged netting, tapering, round nets)	41 - 56
5.	Tabular nets and bags	57 - 61
6.	Mounting nets	62 - 67
7.	Square netting (different methods)	68 - 72
8.	Repairing nets	73 - 77
9.	Miscellaneous processes (flat knotting)	78 - 88
10.	Things to make (garden, sport, hunting nets, etc.)	89 - 97
	Index	101 - 104

(Basic rules for netmaking but no examples of fishing nets)

Popular

Blandford, P.W., 1976 Rope splicing. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson, 105 p., 67 figs.

		Pages
1.	Splicing preliminaries (natural ropes, synthetic ropes, tools)	9 - 14
2.	Basic eye splice	15 - 21
3.	Basic joining and end splices	22 - 28
4.	Other eye splices	29 - 44
5.	End-to-end splices	45 - 58
6.	Splicing cables	59 - 63
7.	Braided rope eye splices	64 - 79
8.	Other braided rope splices	80 - 90
9.	Miscellaneous splices	91 - 100
	Glossary and Index	103 - 105

Popular

Buckingham, H., Making and mending nets. London, edited by A. Bowbeer, World Fishing, 86 p. and figs. 1976

		Pages
	Making and mending a 36 ft headline trawl	
1.	Basic braiding technique	1 - 4
2.	Braiding top and bottom panels	5 - 8
3.	Braiding the wings	9 - 12
4.	Finishing the wings; beginning assembly	13 - 16
5.	Roping out: fishing lines, belly ropes, flopper	17 - 20
6.	Fitting the flopper, chafers, footrope, codline	21 - 24
7.	Simple repairs	25 - 28
8.	Torn-out bellies and mending in shooters	29 - 32
9.	Repairs to lower wings and bossom	33 - 36
10.	More difficult repairs, including damage to headline	37 - 41
11.	Spare sections: don't over-economise	41 - 44
	Design of trawls	
12.	Two trawls for a 50-70 ft boat	45 - 47
13.	Detailed instructions for the two trawls	48 - 51
14.	The Buckingham side-wing trawl	51 - 55
15.	Major modifications to an existing trawl	55 - 58
16.	A 20 ft beam trawl	59 - 62
17.	A 12 ft beam trawl	63 - 65
18.	Advantages of pair trawls	65 - 66
19.	A bottom pair trawl for boats up to 150 hp	66 - 69
20.	A 28 ft GRP inshore trawler	70
21.	Development of an ideal net	71 - 77
22.	"Ticino", a modern inshore trawler	78
23.	Four more trawl designs for boats from 10 up to 180 hp (small box trawl, conventional trawl, semi-pelagic trawl, Granton-type trawl)	79 - 85
24.	Conversion scales (length measuring)	86

FAO, Catalogue of fishing gear designs. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 155 p., figs. and tables 1972

→ Fishing

Fishing News International and Fishing News (eds.), Modern fishing gear of the world. London, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 603 p., figs. and tables (Second FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, London 1963) 1964

→ Fishing

Garner, J., How to make and set nets (or the technology of netting). London, Fishing News (Books), 96 p., 60 figs. 1962

		Pages
1.	Mesh size	13 - 15
2.	Netmaking machines	16 - 21
3.	Loom planning (economical use of netting machines)	22 - 23
4.	Shaping netting	32 - 34
5.	Hanging netting (attaching netting to ropes)	35 - 40
6.	Seine net patterns	41 - 45
7.	Trawls	46 - 60
8.	Pound nets	61 - 68

9. Surround nets 69 - 74

Appendixes

Illustrations of fishing gear 75 - 77

Dictionary of fishing gear and terminology 78 - 95

Garner, J., 1973 Modern inshore fishing gear: rigging and mending. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 67 p., 68 figs.

→ Fishing

Graumont, R. and E. Wenstrom, Fisherman's knots and nets. Cambridge, Maryland, Cornell Maritime Press, 203 p., 77 plates

1. Angler's and still fishermen's knots (attaching lines to leaders, fishhook ties, attachments for droppers, swivels, angler's ties) 1 - 29
2. Commercial fishermen's knots (hitches and bends, simple and useful knots, line connections, fishhook ties, surface trawl (trolline), end rope knots and splices, rope ladder making, emergency fishhook ties, whaling irons, fishing through the ice, a grapple, spears, etc.) 30 - 131
3. Fishing traps and seines (fyke nets, gillnets, trammel nets, mesh measurements and hanging nets, traps, pound and hoop nets) 133 - 144
4. Netmaking and repairing (needles, methods of weaving (knitting), net repairing, reducing and increasing meshes, lock knots, landing nets) 145 - 181

Appendix

F.E. Firth and C.B. Carlson, Preservation and care of fish nets 182 - 198

Index 199 - 203

Hillier, A.J., 1972 How to plan and cut nets. Kingston, R.I., University of Rhode Island, Mar.Bull.Ser.Univ.R.I.Sea Grant Program, (8):11 p., 19 figs.

Pages

1. Introduction (midwater and bottom nets) 1 - 2
2. Body cutting formula 2 - 6
3. The jib cutting formula 6 - 7
4. Extension piece formula 7 - 8
5. Other problems and solutions (tapering of irregular netting, cutting diagrams) 8 - 11

Holdgate, C., 1974 Net making. Buchanan, N.Y., Emerson Books, 136 p., 104 figs.

Pages

1. What you will need (twines, needles, etc.) 9 - 12
2. Netting as a group activity (for teachers) 13 - 16
3. Beginners, please (basic knot, loading the needle) 17 - 24

4. The course (first practice pieces) 25 - 81
5. Now you can net (general hints and further work: weaver's knot, increasing, decreasing, selvedge, mesh stick, netting from right to left, mesh sizes, square mesh netting, crab pot) 83 - 123
6. Knots 124 - 136

Popular

ISO (International Standardization Office): Recommendations and standards -

International Standardization Office, Cutting netting to shape, determination of the cutting rate. 1972 Geneva, ISO, ISO 2075:5 p.

International Standardization Office, Designation of netting yarns in the tex system. Geneva, ISO, 1973 ISO 858:2 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: description and designation of knotted netting. 1973 Geneva, ISO, ISO 1530:3 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: hanging of netting, basic terms and definitions. 1973 Geneva, ISO, ISO 1531:1 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: cutting knotted netting to shape ("tapering"). 1973 Geneva, ISO, ISO 1532:5 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: determination of breaking, load and knot breaking 1973 load of netting yarns. Geneva, ISO, ISO 1805:4 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: determination of breaking load of netting. Geneva, ISO, ISO 1806:4 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: drawings, general directives. Geneva, ISO, 1973 ISO 3169:6 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: netting, basic terms and definitions. Geneva, ISO, 1974 ISO 1107:3 p.

International Standardization Office, Netting yarns, determination of change in length after immersion 1974 in water. Geneva, ISO, ISO 3090:2 p.

International Standardization Office, Fishing nets: mounting and joining netting, terms and illustra- 1975 tions. Geneva, ISO, ISO 3660:9 p.

Japan International Cooperation Agency, Japanese fishing gear and methods. Textbook for marine 1974 fisheries research course in Tokai Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 300 p.

→ Fishing

Kanagawa International Fisheries Training Center, Outline of fishing gear and method. Tokyo, Japan 1978 International Cooperation Agency, 123 p., figs. and tables

→ Fishing

Klust, G., 1973 Netting materials for fishing gear. FAO Fishing Manuals. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books) 173 p., 61 figs. and 33 tables

		Pages
1.	Raw materials for netting	1
1.1	Vegetable fibres	1 - 6
1.2	Synthetic fibres	6 - 30
2.	Netting yarns	31
2.1	Construction of netting yarns	31 - 52
2.2	Designation of netting yarns	52 - 59
2.3	Properties of netting yarns	59 - 141
3.	Choice of netting materials for fishing gear	142
3.1	General remarks	142 - 143
3.2	Specification of netting yarn and netting for purchase	143 - 148
3.3	Choice of netting material for bottom trawls	148 - 155
3.4	Choice of netting material for midwater trawls	155 - 161
3.5	Choice of netting material for purse seine nets	161 - 162
3.6	Choice of netting material for gillnets	162 - 168
	References	169 - 173

Klust, G., Fibre ropes for fishing gear. FAO Fishing Manuals. (in preparation)

Kristjonsson, H. (ed.), 1959 Modern fishing gear of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 607 p., figs. and tables (First FAO World Fishing Gear Congress, Hamburg 1957)

→ Fishing

Lal, K.B., 1969 An introduction to fishing gear technology. New Delhi, Metropolitan Book Co. PVT. 229 p. and 45 tables

→ Fishing

Libert, L. and A. Maucorps, 1973 Mending of fishing nets. FAO Fishing Manuals. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 102 p., 80 figs.

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Materials and general concepts	2
2.1	Materials used in the workshop	2 - 4
2.2	General concepts: the headpiece, definitions, knots	4 - 6
3.	Cutting	7
3.1	Materials used	7
3.2	Cutting of a rectangular piece of netting	7 - 9
3.3	Oblique cuts	9 - 15

4.	Braiding	16
4.1	Making rectangular piece of netting	16 - 27
4.2	Process of braiding with baitings	27 - 34
4.3	Braiding process with increase	34 - 37
4.4	Process of braiding of flymeshes on wings	37 - 40
5.	Net mending	41
5.1	Work preliminary to mending a tear	41 - 43
5.2	Repairs to tears on the inside of a panel	43 - 60
5.3	Repairs on selvedges other than those in the inner edges of wings	60 - 75
5.4	Repairing the inner selvedges of the trawl wings	75 - 83
5.5	Other repairs with bating	83 - 88
5.6	Repairs of flymesh selvedges, with increase	89 - 92
6.	Notes of the making and mounting of net sections	93
6.1	Reinforcement braiding	93
6.2	Assembling the net sections	93 - 100
7.	Conclusions	101
	References	102

Nédélec, C. (ed.), FAO catalogue of small-scale fishing gear. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News 1975 (Books) for FAO, 191 p., figs. and tables

→ Fishing

Noel, H.S. and A. Bowbeer (eds.), Fisherman's manual. London, World Fishing. 126 p., and figs. 1976

→ Fishing

Nomura, M. and T. Yamazaki, Fishing techniques. Compilation of transcript of lectures presented at the 1975 training Department, SEAFDEC. Tokyo, Japan International Cooperation Agency, 206 p., figs. and tables

→ Fishing

Oliver, R.C., Trawlermen's handbook. London, Fishing News (Books) 228 p., 133 figs., 5 colour plates 1965 and 4 black and white plates

→ Fishing

Skirving, R.S., 1974 Wire splicing. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson, 49 p., 13 figs.

		Pages
1.	General points concerning wire rope and wire splicing tools	1 - 6
2.	The eye-splice	7 - 22
3.	The short splice	23 - 26
4.	Wire grommets and the stropping of blocks	27 - 33
5.	The long splice	34 - 49

Popular

POLLUTION AND CONTAMINATION

Pollution in marine and freshwaters; avoidance and prevention; monitoring systems; legislation

Bishop, J.E., 1973 Limnology of a small Malayan river. The Hague, Dr. W. Junk Publishers, 485 p., 67 figs., 15 black and coloured plates and 94 tables

→ Environment

Borgstrom, G. (ed.), 1962 Fish as food. Vol. 2. Nutrition, sanitation and utilization. New York and London, Academic Press, 777 p., figs.

→ Processing

Brown, E.D., 1971 The legal regime of hydrospace. London, Stevens & Sons, 236 p.

→ Legislation

FAO, 1974 FAO/SIDA Training Course on Marine Pollution in Relation to Protection of Living Resources. Gothenburg 1972. Lectures presented at the First FAO/SIDA Training Course on Marine Pollution in Relation to Protection of Living Resources. Supplement to the report. Rome, FAO/SIDA/TF 95 Suppl. 327 p., figs. and tables

		Pages
1.	Andrén, L., Marine pollution and world fisheries	1 - 9
2.	Svansson, A., Dynamic processes in the sea	10 - 17
3.	Olausson, E., Sedimentation, water sediment exchange: marine sediments and their use in environmental studies	18 - 25
4.	Karlgren, L., Organic wastes from domestic sewage, agricultural activities and food processing	26 - 36
5.	Bruneau, L., Forest industry wastes and other organic industrial waters	37 - 52
6.	Bruneau, L., Techniques for control of industrial wastes	53 - 58
7.	Jernelöv, A., Persistent pesticides and heavy metals	59 - 76
8.	Brokis, G.J., Sources of sea pollution by oil	77 - 96
9.	Landner, L., Inorganic wastes, solids and thermopollution	97 - 108
10.	Keckes, S., Radioactive wastes	109 - 117
11.	Bonde, G.J., Microbiological pollutants	118 - 134
12.	Steele, J.H., Biological transfer of pollutants and their effects	135 - 148
13.	Lindquist, A., Effects on populations and community structure	149 - 162
14.	Regier, H.A., The ecological structure and economic value of fish communities as affected by cultural stresses	163 - 176
15.	Berge, G., Primary production, its measurement and application in pollution studies	177 - 194
16.	Ackefors, H., Plankton methodology	195 - 222
17.	Swift, D.R., Aquaculture and pollution	223 - 231
18.	Regier, H.A., Application of ecological theory to the conservation of fishery resources	232 - 241
19.	Johannes, R.E., Marine pollution on shallow tropical waters	242 - 258
20.	Lindquist, A., Methods in fishery biology	259 - 276
21.	Lundälv, T., Quantitative studies on rocky-bottom biocoenoses by underwater photogrammetry	277 - 285
22.	Thorslund, A.E., Towards a strategy for pollution control	286 - 291
23.	Thorslund, A.E., Water quality criteria and standards	292 - 295

24. Moore, G., International and national legislation and regulatory institutions 296 - 311
25. Andrén, L., Exchange of research information and data 312 - 323
26. Holt, S.J., Alternative uses of the sea 324 - 327

References at the end of each chapter

University level

FAO, 1975 Manual of methods in aquatic environment research. Part 1. Methods for detection, measurement and monitoring of water pollution. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (137):238 p., figs and tables

Pages

1. General aspects and problems

1.1 Fonselius, S.H., Standardization and intercallibration of chemical methods in oceanography 1 - 12
1.2 Jensen, S., Standardization and intercallibration in residue analysis 13 - 16
1.3 Fonselius, S.H., Errors and accuracy in chemical analysis with special reference to marine chemistry 17 - 19
1.4 Fonselius, S.H., Units used in chemical oceanography and marine chemistry 20 - 21
1.5 Carlberg, S.R., Introduction to hydrographical laboratory work 22 - 32
1.6 Björndahl, H., Introduction to analysis of oxygen demand, organic carbon, nitrogen and suspended matter: means and goals for the research 33 - 40
1.7 Lithner, G., Pretreatment of samples (organic matter, sediments and water) for subsequent determination of heavy metals by atomic absorption spectroscopy 41 - 46
1.8 Ekedahl, G., Introduction to analysis of heavy metals 47 - 54
1.9 Lindgren, O., Heavy metal analysis by atomic absorption spectroscopy (AAS) and flame emission spectroscopy (FES) 55 - 60
1.10 Röndell, B., Heavy metal analysis in water by colorimetric methods 61 - 68
1.11 Carlberg, S.R. et al., Introduction to chromatographic methods with special reference to analysis of pesticides and oil pollutants in the environment 69 - 76
1.12 Jensen, S., Analysis of chlorinated hydrocarbons in the environment 77 - 82
1.13 Carlberg, S.R., The infrared (IR) spectrophotometer and its use in analytical work 83 - 84
1.14 Carlberg, S.R., Analysis of aquatic mineral oil pollution - a presentation of alternative analytical techniques 85 - 97

2. Practical guide to measurement methods

2.1 Methods for the determination of physical parameters from a research vessel 99 - 114
2.2 Methods for the determination of physical and inorganic parameters in water 115 - 168
2.3 Methods for determination of some selected organic parameters in water 169 - 192
2.4 Methods of sampling and pretreatment of biological material 193 - 199
2.5 Digestion methods for the determination of the total content of heavy metals 200
2.6 Methods for the chemical analysis of sediments 201 - 211
2.7 Metal analysis by atomic absorption and flame emission techniques 212 - 219
2.8 Methods for colorimetric determination of aluminium, iron, manganese and copper in natural waters 220 - 228

2.9 Methods of analysis of DDT and PCB in environmental samples using chromatographic methods 229 - 236
2.10 Gas chromatographic analysis of methyl mercury in fish 237 - 238

References at the end of most chapters

University level

FAO, 1976 FAO/SIDA Training Course on Marine Pollution in Relation to Protection of Living Resources. Gothenburg 1973. Lectures presented to the second FAO/SIDA Training Course on Marine Pollution in Relation to Protection of Living Resources. Supplement to the report. Rome, FAO/SIDA/TF, 108 Suppl. 109 p., figs.and tables

		Pages
1.	Fonselius, S., Primary production and nutrients in sea water	1 - 7
2.	Bögander, L.E., Redox measurements in natural waters and sediments	8 - 15
3.	Ekedahl, G., and B. Röndell, Interlaboratory study of methods for chemical analysis of water	16 - 27
4.	Carlberg, S.R., Oil and oil dispersants	28 - 35
5.	Carlberg, S.R., Case study: chemical analysis of a sea area polluted by mineral oil	36 - 46
6.	McIntyre, A.D., Ecological affects of marine pollutants	47 - 55
7.	Alabaster, J.S., Investigation of acute pollution problems affecting fisheries in estuaries and coastal waters	56 - 64
8.	Swedmark, M., A. Granmo and S. Kollberg, Toxicity testing at Kristineberg Zool. Station	65 - 74
9.	Berg, I. and A. Granmo, Toxicity testing in a continuous flow system	75 - 80
10.	Hasselrot, T., Bioassay methods used by the research laboratory at the Swedish National Environment Protection Board	81 - 91
11.	Tomczak, G., Monitoring of aquatic pollution	92 - 109

References at the end of each chapter

Hickling, C.F., 1975 Water as a productive environment. London, Croom Helm, 250 p.

→ Environment

IMCO (Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), 1973 International Conference on marine pollution. Final act of the conference including International convention for the prevention of pollution from ships, 1973 and Procol relating to intervention on the high seas in cases of marine pollution by substances other than oil. London, IMCO, 171 p.

	Pages
Final act of the conference	4 - 18
Attachment 1 International convention for the prevention of pollution from ships, 1973	19 - 34
Annex I Regulations for the prevention of pollution by oil	36 - 79
Annex II Regulations for the control of pollution by noxious liquid substances	80 - 109

Annex III
Regulations for the prevention of pollution by harmful substances carried by sea in packaged forms, or freight containers, portable tanks or road and rail tank wagons 110 - 112

Annex IV
Regulations for the prevention of pollution by sewage from ships 113 - 120

Annex V
Regulations for the prevention of pollution by garbage from ships 121 - 124

Attachment 2
Protocol relating to intervention on the high seas in cases of marine pollution by substances other than oil, 1973 125 - 128

Attachment 3
Resolutions 1 - 26 129 - 149

Johnston, D.M. (ed.), Marine pollution. London and New York, Academic Press, 729 p., figs. and tables 1976

	Pages
Mechanisms in marine pollution	3
1. Johnston, R., Mechanisms and problems of marine pollution in relation to commercial fisheries	3 - 5
1.1 Introduction	5 - 7
1.2 Atmospheric pollution	8 - 22
1.3 Pollution and the chemical elements	22 - 28
1.4 Essentials of the biology of marine fish and shellfish relevant to pollution studies	28 - 53
1.5 Waterborne pollution	53 - 65
1.6 Organic poisons, inhibitors and contaminants	65 - 81
1.7 Particular pollution	81 - 102
1.8 North Sea oil and gas	102 - 137
1.9 Pollution nationwide	137 - 148
1.10 Today's reckoning	148 - 151
1.11 References	151 - 158
Topics of marine pollution	157
2. Craig, R.E., Dispersion in estuaries and inshore waters	159
2.1 Editor's prologue	159 - 160
2.2 Introduction	160 - 161
2.3 Continuous discharge	161 - 165
2.4 Discontinuous discharge	165 - 172
2.5 Observed values of K (diffusion coefficient)	172 - 174
2.6 A broader look	174 - 183
2.7 References	183
3. Bryan, G.H., Heavy metal contamination in the sea	185
3.1 Introduction	185 - 187
3.2 Sources of metals	187 - 197
3.3 Metals in sea water	197 - 206
3.4 Sediments	206 - 212
3.5 Metals of marine estuarine organisms	212 - 248
3.6 Toxic effects of heavy metals	248 - 272
3.7 Effects of contamination	272 - 289
3.8 References	290 - 302

4. Topping, G., Sewage and the sea 303

4.1 Introduction 303 - 311
4.2 The essential inorganic nutrients 311 - 320
4.3 Nutrient enrichment from sewage 320 - 332
4.4 An assessment of the general effects of sewage in the marine environment 332 - 346
4.5 Summary, conclusions and recommendations 346 - 348
4.6 Appendix (remarks to figs. 5 and 6) 348
4.7 References 348 - 351

5. Cowell, E.B., Oil pollution of the sea 353

5.1 Introduction 353 - 354
5.2 Oil production and losses to the sea 354 - 364
5.3 Oil pollution research 364 - 389
5.4 General considerations 389 - 395
5.5 References 395 - 401

6. Boume, H.D.P., Seabirds and pollution 403

6.1 Introduction 403 - 406
6.2 The life of seabirds 406 - 408
6.3 Types of pollution 408 - 463
6.4 Pollution in different oceans and groups of birds 463 - 481
6.5 Conclusion 481
6.6 Acknowledgements 481 - 482
6.7 Appendix: estimations of chlorinated hydrocarbons in marine birds 482 - 493
6.8 References 494 - 502

Measurements of biological response 503

7. Perkins, E.J., The evaluation of biological response by toxicity and water quality assessments 505

7.1 Introduction 505 - 520
7.2 Biological response as measured by toxicity tests 521 - 543
7.3 The assessment of long-term biological response 543 - 565
7.4 Biological response and water quality evaluation 566 - 576
7.5 Conclusions and further outlook 576 - 577
7.6 References 577 - 585

Legal aspects in marine pollution 587

8. Moore, G., Legal aspects of marine pollution control 589

8.1 Introduction 589 - 593
8.2 Controls at the international level 593 - 668
8.3 Controls at the national level 668 - 692
8.4 Final conclusions 697

Suggestions for further readings (see also at the end of chapters 1 - 7) 699 - 703

Index 705 - 729

University level

Macan, T.T., Freshwater ecology. London, Longman, 338 p., 65 figs. and 39 tables 1963

→ Biology

Milne, P.H., Fish and shellfish farming in coastal waters. London, Fishing News (Books), 208 p., 1972 151 figs. and tables

→ Aquaculture

Nakamura, H., Tuna, distribution and migration. London, Fishing News (Books), 76 p., 23 figs. and 1969 6 tables

→ Biology

Nelson-Smith, A., Oil pollution and marine ecology. London, Elek Science, 260 p., figs. and tables 1972

		Pages
1.	Marine ecology	1 - 14
2.	Water pollution	15 - 27
3.	The growing problem of oil pollution	28 - 41
4.	Sources of oil pollution	42 - 70
5.	Properties of spilt oil	71 - 98
6.	Effects of oil on marine organisms	99 - 150
7.	Effects on marine communities	151 - 165
8.	Economic and other effects	166 - 172
9.	Dealing with spilt oil	173 - 213
	Bibliography	215 - 240
	Index	241 - 260

Oda, S., The law of the sea in our time. Vol. 1. New developments. 1966-1975 Leyden, A.W. Sijthoff 1977 Publishing Co. BV. Sijthoff publications on ocean development. Vol. 3:269 p.

→ Legislation

Oda, S., The law of the sea in our time. Vol. 2. The UN Seabed Committee, 1968 - 1973. Leyden, A.W. 1977 Sijthoff Publishing Co. BV. Sijthoff publications on ocean development. Vol. 4:332 p.

→ Legislation

Padelford, N.J., Public policy for seas. Cambridge, Mass., MIT Press, 338 p., tables, diagrams and 14 1970 illustrations

→ Economics

Rheinheimer, G., Aquatic microbiology. London, John Wiley & Sons, 184 p., 72 figs. 1970

→ Biology

Ruivo, M. (ed.), Pollution, an international problem for fisheries. Rome, FAO, 85 p., 7 figs. and
1971 8 tables

		Pages
1.	Introduction	1 - 6
2.	Characteristics of water pollution	7
2.1	Nature and sources of water pollutants	7 - 31
2.2	Effects of pollutants on fisheries	31 - 42
3.	Regional aspects of aquatic pollution with respect to fisheries	43
3.1	Developed areas	43 - 52
3.2	Developing areas	52 - 58
4.	Water quality and the monitoring of pollution	59
4.1	Water-quality criteria and standards	59 - 60
4.2	Warning and monitoring systems	60 - 64
4.3	Attempts to organize monitoring systems	64 - 66
5.	Means of reducing pollution	67
5.1	Preventive and curative measures	67 - 68
5.2	Emergency remedial measures	68 - 71
6.	Administration and legal aspects of aquatic pollution	72
6.1	National administration	72 - 73
6.2	National legislation	73 - 75
6.3	International aspects	75 - 78
7.	Fish and fisheries in the environmental context	79 - 82
	References	83 - 85

Ruivo, M. (ed.), Marine pollution and sea life. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), for FAO,
1972 624 p., figs. and tables

		Pages
1.	Marine pollution in the world today	2 - 111
2.	Behaviour and fate of pollutants in the marine environment	112 - 188
3.	Effects of pollutants on the biology and life cycle of marine organisms	189 - 346
4.	Ecosystem modifications and effects on marine communities	347 - 449
5.	Technical aspects of minimizing pollution and countering its effects	450 - 531
6.	Effects of pollutants on quality of marine products and effects on fishing	532 - 600
7.	Scientific basis for international legislative control of marine pollution in the interests of marine resources and fisheries	601 - 624
	References at the end of the single contribution to the 7 chapters	

Russell-Hunter, H.D., Aquatic productivity: an introduction to some basic aspects of biological
1970 oceanography and limnology. New York, Macmillan, 306 p.

→ Environment

Tiews, K. (ed.), Proceedings of the International Seminar on fisheries resources and their management
1976 in Southeast Asia. Berlin, 19 November - 6 December 1974. Organized by the German Foundation for International Development in cooperation with The Federal Research Boards of Fisheries and FAO. Bonn, Druckerei Heinz Lammerick, 522 p., figs. and tables

→ Economics

United Nations, National legislation and treaties relating to the territorial sea, the contiguous zone,
1970 the continental shelf, the high seas and to fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea. United Nations Legislative Series. New York, United Nations, 931 p.

→ Legislation

United Nations, National legislation and treaties relating to the law of the sea. United Nations
1974 Legislative Series. New York, United Nations, 604 p.

→ Legislation

Whitton, B.A., River ecology. Oxford, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Stud.Ecol., (2):756 p.,
1975 149 figs.

→ Environment

Wood, E.J.F. and R.E. Johannes (eds.), Tropical marine pollution. Amsterdam, Elsevier, Elsevier
1975 Oceanogr.Ser., 12:192 p., 30 figs. and tables

		Pages
1.	Johannes, R.E. and S.B. Betzer, Introduction: marine communities respond differently to pollution in the tropics than at higher latitudes	1 - 12
2.	Johannes, R.E., Pollution and degradation of coral reefs communities	13 - 51
3.	Odum, W.E. and R.E. Johannes, The response of mangroves to man-induced environmental stress	52 - 62
4.	Zieman, J.C., Tropical sea grass ecosystems and pollution	63 - 74
5.	Zieman, J.C. and E.J.F. Wood, The effects of thermal pollution on tropical type estuaries, with emphasis on Biscayne Bay, Florida	75 - 98
6.	Chester, R.H., Biological impact of a large-scale desalination plant at Key West, Florida	99 - 153
	References	154 - 181
	Index	182 - 192

University level

PROCESSING AND MARKETING

Handling, preservation, processing, marketing, distribution and quality control of fish, shellfish, seaweeds, etc., and by-products

Borgstrom, G. (ed.), Fish as food. Vol.1. Production, biochemistry and microbiology. New York and London, Academic Press, 725 p., figs., tables 1961

		Pages
Production		
1.	Hempel, G., Biology of seafish production	1 - 40
2.	Riedel, D., World fishes	41 - 75
3.	Mann, H., Fish cultivation in Europe	77 - 102
4.	Tamura, T., Carp cultivation in Japan	103 - 120
5.	Drews, R.A., Raising fish for food in Southeast Asia	121 - 143
6.	Jacquot, R., Organic constituents of fish and other aquatic animal foods	145 - 209
Biochemistry		
7.	Tsuchiya, T., Biochemistry for fish oils	211 - 258
8.	Notevarp, O., Recent findings in fatty acid and composition of marine oils	259 - 274
9.	Dyer, W.J. and R.D. Dingle, Fish proteins with special reference to freezing	275 - 327
10.	Kimata, M., The histamine problem	329 - 352
11.	Simidu, W., Nonprotein notrohenous compounds	353 - 384
12.	Anilacher, E., Rigor mortis fish	385 - 409
13.	Higashi, H., Vitamins in fish, with special reference to edible parts	411 - 486
Microbiology		
14.	Shewan, J.M., The microbiology of seawater fish	487 - 560
15.	Fieger, E.A. and A.F. Novak, Microbiology of shellfish deterioration	561 - 611
16.	Bramstedt, F. and M. Auerbach, The spoilage of freshwater fish	613 - 637
17.	Tarr, H.L.A., Chemical control of microbiological deterioration	639 - 680
List of common food fishes (English/Latin and Latin/English)		681 - 713
Index		715 - 724

University level

Borgstrom, G. (ed.), Fish as food. Vol.2. Nutrition, sanitation and utilization. New York and London, Academic Press, 777 p., figs., tables 1962

		Pages
1.	Cutting, C.L., Historical aspects of fish	1 - 28
Nutrition		
2.	Geiger, E. and G. Borgstrom, Fish protein, nutritive aspects	29 - 114
	Borgstrom, G., Shellfish protein, nutritive aspects	115 - 147
3.	Toyama, T. and T. Kaneda, Nutritive aspects of fish oils	149 - 173

4. Cruickshank, E., Fat soluble vitamins 175 - 203
5. Causaret, J., Fish as a source of mineral nutrition 205 - 234
6. Tarr, H.L.A., Changes in nutritive value through handling and processing procedures 235 - 266
7. Borgstrom, G., Fish in world nutrition 267 - 360
8. Arimoto, K., The role of marine and freshwater foods in the Japanese diet 361 - 375
9. March, B.E., Fish meal and condensed fish solubles in poultry and livestock feeding 377 - 434
10. Leoschke, W.L., Fish in the raising of mink 435 - 441

Sanitation

11. Shewan, J.M., Food poisoning caused by fish and fishery products 443 - 466
Kawabeta, T., Fish-borne food poisoning in Japan 467 - 479
12. Guélin, A., Polluted waters and the contamination of fish 481 - 502
13. Buttiaux, R., Salmonella problems in the sea 503 - 519
14. Halstead, B.W., Biotoxications, allergies and other disorders 521 - 540
15. Oppemheimer, C.H., On marine fish diseases 541 - 572
16. van Duijin, Jr., O., Diseases of freshwater fish 573 - 593
17. Fry, F.E.J. and K.S. Norris, The transportation of live fish 595 - 608
18. Borgstrom, G. and C. Paris, Radioactivity and seafood 609 - 635

Utilization

19. Borgstrom, G., Trends in the utilization of fish and shellfish 637 - 725

List of common food fishes (English/Latin and Latin/English) 727 - 759

Index 761 - 777

University level

Borgstrom, G. (ed.), Fish as food. Vol.3. Processing. Part 1. New York and London, Academic Press, 1965 489 p., figs., tables

Pages

1. Jeson, A.C., Drying and dehydration 1 - 54
2. Cutting, C.L., Smoking 55 - 105
3. Voskresensky, A., Salting of herring 107 - 131
4. van Klaveren, F.W. and R. Legendre, Salted cod 133 - 163
5. Meyer, V., Marinades 165 - 193
6. Alm, F., Scandinavian anchovies and herring tidbits 195 - 217
7. Cheftel, H., The processing of anchovy (Engraulis encrasicholus L.) 219 - 225
8. van Vee, A.G., Fermented and dried seafood products in Southeast Asia 227 - 250
9. Maruyama, T., Whale products as food 251 - 264
10. Amano, K., Fish sausage manufacturing 265 - 280
11. Lassen, S., Fish solubles 281 - 299
12. Borgstrom, G. and C.D. Paris, The regional development of fisheries and fish processing 301 - 409
13. Sparre, T., Fish meal: manufacture, properties and utilization 411 - 444

List of common food fishes (English/Latin and Latin/English) 445 - 477

Index 479 - 489

University level

Borgstrom, G. (ed.), Fish as food. Vol.4. Processing. Part 2. New York and London, Academic Press, 1965 518 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Bramsnaes, F., Handling of fresh fish	1 - 63
2.	Farber, L., Freshness tests	65 - 126
3.	van den Broek, C.J.H., Fish canning	127 - 205
4.	Lassen, L.S., Tuna canning and preservation of the raw material through brine refrigeration	207 - 245
5.	Chaftel, H., The canning of the sardine, Clupea pilchardus Walnaum	247 - 263
6.	Stenstrom, M.D., Scandinavian sardines	265 - 290
7.	Clark, B.S. and R.M. Berglund, Canning of Maine sardines	291 - 303
8.	Tanikawa, E. and S. Doha, Heat processing of shellfish	305 - 337
	Takahashi, T., squid meat and its processing	339 - 354
9.	Heen, E. and O. Karsti, Fish and shellfish freezing	355 - 418
10.	Coleby, B. and J.M. Shewan, The radiation preservation of fish	419 - 435
11.	Jul, M., Processing at sea and factory ships	437 - 472
	List of common food fishes (English/Latin and Latin/English)	473 - 505
	Index	507 - 518

University level

Brody, J., Fishery by-products technology. Westport, Conn., Avi Publishing Co., 232 p., 50 figs., 1965 22 tables

		Pages
1.	Liquid fish glue	1 - 18
2.	Gelatin and isinglass production	19 - 25
3.	Pearl essence	26 - 32
4.	Leather production from fish skins	33 - 46
5.	Fish liver oils	47 - 68
6.	Non-fat components of fish oils	69 - 85
7.	Productivity of vitamin concentrates	86 - 95
8.	Salmon egg by-products and other salmon cannery waste	96 - 102
9.	Insulin	103 - 109
10.	Biochemical and pharmaceutical products of special interest	110 - 119
11.	Fish meal production	120 - 146
12.	General considerations of fish oils	147 - 164
13.	Fish-body oil	165 - 178
14.	Refining and utilization of fish oils	179 - 187
15.	Production of fish albumin, peptones, and amino acids	188 - 197
16.	Animal feed	198 - 203
17.	Plant food	204 - 208
18.	Fish protein concentrate (fish flour)	209 - 226
	Index	227 - 232

References at the end of each chapter

University level

Burgess, G.H.O., J.A. Lovern and J.J. Waterman (eds.), Fish handling and processing. Edinburgh, H.M.S.O., 1965 390 p., 135 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	About this book	1 - 3
2.	The handling of fish at sea	4 - 37
3.	The handling and distribution of fish on land	38 - 69

4.	The smoking of fish	70 - 101
5.	Salt curing	102 - 119
6.	Drying	120 - 138
7.	Freezing and the cold storage	139 - 181
8.	Thawing	182 - 194
9.	Canning	195 - 222
10.	Fish meal and oil	223 - 256
11.	Retailing	257 - 272
12.	Fish as living animal	273 - 294
13.	What fish are made of	295 - 318
14.	Fish and physics	319 - 345
15.	Fish spoilage	346 - 356
16.	Instruments	357 - 376
17.	How to find out more	377 - 378
	Index	379 - 390

Popular

Connell, J.J., Control of fish quality. West Byfleet, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 177 p., 44 figs.
1975

		Pages
1.	What is quality?	1 - 2
2.	Intrinsic quality	3 - 28
3.	Quality deterioration and intrinsic quality defects in raw material	29 - 53
4.	Quality deterioration and defects in products	54 - 97
5.	Further aspects of quality	98 - 106
6.	Methods of assessing and selecting for quality	107 - 132
7.	Organization of quality control and official inspection	133 - 153
8.	Standards	154 - 159
9.	Codes of practice	160 - 163
	Suggested further reading and reference	164 - 170
	Index	171 - 177

Popular

FAO, Fisheries in the food economy. Rome, FAO, FAO Basic Stud., (19):79 p., 8 tables
1968

→ Economics

FAO Fishery Economics and Institutions Division and Fishery Industries Division (eds.), Fishing ports
1970 and markets. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 396 p., figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Preliminary physical and economic investigations	1 - 54
2.	Planning and layout of fishing harbours	55 - 82
3.	Improvements to existing minor landing places	83 - 111
4.	Coastal drift and the uses of hydraulic models	113 - 147
5.	Structural design: construction and maintenance of harbours	149 - 174
6.	Construction and layout of market halls	175 - 214
7.	Market and auction systems	215 - 238

8.	Unloading and handling and supply facilities	239 - 270
9.	Vessel servicing facilities	271 - 293
10.	The planning of processing and transportation facilities	295 - 313
11.	Government and industry roles in harbour development	315 - 335
12.	Capital costs and financial administration	337 - 344
13.	Harbour administration and control	345 - 385
14.	Administration and management of port markets	387 - 396

References at the end of some chapters

University level

FAO, Smoke curing of fish. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Rep., (88):43 p.
1970

	Page
Introduction	1
Factors affecting the quality of smoked fish	4
The raw material	4
Pre-smoking treatments	4
Principles of smoking and drying	6
Smoked fish products in developed countries	8
Cold smoked products	8
Cold smoked fatty fish products	8
Cold smoked salmon (U.K. and North America)	10
Cold smoked lean fish products	10
Cold smoked crustaceans	11
Cold smoked roes (U.K.)	11
Hot smoked products	12
Hot smoked fatty fish products	12
Hot smoked salmon and trout	14
Hot smoked lean fish products	14
Hot smoked crustaceans and molluscs	15
Traditional smoke-dried products in tropical countries	16
Smoke-dried products	16
Boiled, smoked and dried products	18
Smoking equipment	22
Primitive operations still in use today	22
Simple smoke units	22
Altona-type oven	24
Large traditional smokehouses	26
Mechanical smoking equipment	26
Packaging, storing, transport and distribution of smoked fish products	30
Cold and hot smoked products	30
Smoke-dried products in tropical areas	31
Guidelines for smoking fish in the tropics	33
General considerations	33
Pre-smoking treatment	33
Smoking and drying	34
Treatment after smoking	35

Appendix 1

General recommendations on the production of good quality smoked fish products 36
Sanitation and hygiene 37

Appendix 2

Some useful tables 38

Brine strength measured at 16°C (60°F) 38
Loss in weight of fish in relation to temperature and processing time in an Altona oven 38
Fish smoking in a "Torry" type mechanical kiln 39
Percentage relative humidities of air from readings of temperature of wet and dry bulb thermometers 40
Temperature conversion 41
Storage life of some species of smoked fish 42
Cold storage life of smoke cured products made from good quality raw material 42

Acknowledgements 43

FAO, Manual on fishermen's cooperatives. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Stud., (13):124 p. 1971

→ Economics

FAO, The production of fish meal and oil. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (142):54 p. 1975

		Page
1.	Introduction	1
2.	Raw material	3
2.1	Resources	3
2.2	Composition of the fish	3
2.3	Sampling of raw materials	3
2.4	Economic evaluation of the raw material	4
2.5	Methods of analysis	4
2.6	Deterioration of the raw fish	4
2.7	Preservation of the raw material	6
3.	The process	7
3.1	The principal method of processing	8
3.2	Milling and storage of fish meal	27
3.3	Special methods of processing	32
4.	Pollution abatement	35
4.1	Pollution from vapour emissions	35
4.2	Pollution from liquid effluents	38
5.	Instrumentation	38
6.	Steam production and power plant	38

7. Consumption of fuel, electric power and water 38

7.1 Fuel oil consumption 38
7.2 Electric power consumption 39
7.3 Water consumption 40

8. Staff 40

8.1 Administration and sales 40
8.2 Laboratory 41
8.3 Unloading and transportation to the plant 41
8.4 Manufacture, bagging and storage 41

9. Investment and operating costs 42

9.1 Investment decision 42
9.2 Investment cost and size of fish meal plant 43
9.3 Annual production costs 44
9.4 Break-even calculations 46

10. The products 48

10.1 Fish meal 48
10.2 Fish oil 50
10.3 Quality assessments 53

FAO, The production of dried fish. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (160):52 p. 1976

Page

1. Introduction 1
2. The dried fish industry 2
3. Why dry fish? 7
4. The principles of drying 8
5. Practical drying in the tropics 18
6. The cost of drying 32
7. Other drying methods 40
8. Storage of dried fish 41
9. Quality and the consumer 44
10. Short list of fish drying terms 46

FAO, Proposed draft code of practice for lobsters and related species. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., 1976 (330):29 p.

Page

1. Section I - Scope 1

2. Section II - Definitions 1

3. Section III - Raw material requirements 2

3.1 General considerations 2

4. Section IV-A - Fishing vessel facilities and operating requirements 3

4.1 General considerations 3
4.2 Lobster vessel construction and sanitary design 3
4.3 Sanitary facilities 5
4.4 Equipment and utensils 6
4.5 Hygienic operating requirements 6

4.6 Handling the catch on board 8
4.7 Unloading and transport of the catch 11
4.8 Sanitary control programme 12

5. Section IV-B - Plant facilities and operating requirements 12

5.1 Plant construction and layout 12
5.2 Equipment and utensils 17
5.3 Hygienic operating requirements 19
5.4 Operating practices and production requirements 21
5.5 Sanitary control programme 26
5.6 Laboratory control 26

6. Section V - End product specifications 27

Appendix I - Flow chart for handling lobsters 28

Appendix II - References to related codes and standards 29

FAO, 1976 Code of practice for salted fish. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., (336):54 p.

Page

1. Section I - Scope 1

2. Section II - Definitions 2

3. Section III - Raw material and ingredient requirements 5

3.1 General considerations 5

4. Section IV-A - Fishing vessel facilities and operating requirements 6

4.1 Fishing vessel construction and sanitary design 6
4.2 Equipment and utensils 12
4.3 Hygienic operating requirements 13
4.4 Operating practices and production requirements 17
4.5 Sanitary control programme 20

5. Section IV-B - Plant facilities and operating requirements 21

5.1 Plant construction and layout 21
5.2 Equipment and utensils 29
5.3 Hygienic operating requirements 31
5.4 Operating practices and production requirements 34
5.5 Sanitary control programme 49

6. Section V - End product specifications 50

Appendix I - The general principles of fish salting 51

Appendix II - Preparation of brine of required strength 53

Appendix III - References to related codes and standards 54

FAO Fishery Industries Division (ed.), 1976 Contributed papers submitted to the Expert Consultation on fishing for squid and other cephalopods. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Rep., (170) Suppl.1:150 p.

→ Fishing

FAO, Code of practice for frozen fish. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., (145)Rev.2:49 p. 1977

		Page
1.	Section I - Scope	1
2.	Section II - Definitions	1
3.	Section III - Raw material requirements	4
	3.1 General considerations	4
4.	Section IV-A - Fishing vessel facilities and operating requirements	4
	4.1 Fishing vessel construction and sanitary design	4
	4.2 Equipment and utensils	9
	4.3 Hygienic operating requirements	10
	4.4 Operating practices and production requirements	13
	4.5 Sanitary control programme	19
5.	Section IV-B - Plant facilities and operating requirements	19
	5.1 Plant construction and layout	19
	5.2 Equipment and utensils	26
	5.3 Hygienic operating requirements	28
	5.4 Operating practices and production requirements	31
	5.5 Thawing of frozen fish	39
	5.6 Sanitary control programme	41
	5.7 Laboratory control	42
6.	Section V - End product specifications	42
7.	Section VI - Retail display	42
	Appendix I	
	1. Factors affecting the quality of frozen fish	43
	2. Some general observations on freezer stores	46
	3. Some general observations on thawing	46
	Appendix II - Cold storage life of frozen fish	48
	Appendix III - References to related codes and standards	49

FAO, Code of practice for minced fish. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., (700):31 p. 1977

		Page
1.	Section I - Scope	1
2.	Section II - Definitions	1
3.	Section III - Raw material requirements	3
	3.1 General considerations	3
4.	Section IV - Plant facilities and operating requirements	4
	4.1 Plant construction and layout	4
	4.2 Equipment and utensils	12
	4.3 Hygienic operating requirements	14
	4.4 Operating practices and production requirements	19
	4.5 Sanitary control programme	29
	4.6 Laboratory control	29

5. Section V - End product specifications 30

Appendix I - Flow diagram for processing of minced fish 31

Appendix II - References to related codes and standards 32

FAO, Code of practice for shrimp or prawns. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., (322)Rev.1:38 p. 1977

Page

1. Section I - Scope 1

2. Section II - Definitions 1

3. Section III - Raw material requirements 2

3.1 General considerations 2

4. Section IV-A - Fishing vessel facilities and operating requirements 3

4.1 Fishing vessel construction and sanitary design 3
4.2 Equipment and utensils 9
4.3 Hygienic operating requirements 10
4.4 Operating practices and production requirements 14
4.5 Sanitary control programme 18

5. Section IV-B - Plant facilities and operating requirements 19

5.1 Plant construction and layout 19
5.2 Equipment and utensils 24
5.3 Hygienic operating requirements 26
5.4 Operating practices and production requirements 30
5.5 Sanitary control programme 34
5.6 Laboratory control 35

6. Section V - End product specifications 35

Appendix I - Flow diagram for handling and processing of shrimp at sea 36

Appendix II - Flow diagram for handling and processing of shrimp on shore 37

Appendix III - References to related codes and standards 38

FAO, Code of practice for crabs. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., (349):49 p. 1977

Page

1. Section I - Scope 1

2. Section II - Definitions 1

3. Section III - Raw material requirements 4

3.1 General considerations 4

4. Section IV-A - Fishing vessel facilities and operating requirements 4

4.1 General considerations 4
4.2 Crab vessel construction and sanitary design 5
4.3 Sanitary facilities 8
4.4 Equipment and utensils 10
4.5 Hygienic operating requirements 11
4.6 Handling the catch on board 15
4.7 Unloading and transport of the catch 19

5. Section IV-B - Plant facilities and operating requirements 20

5.1 Plant construction and layout 20
5.2 Equipment and utensils 29
5.3 Hygienic operating requirements 33
5.4 Operating practices and production requirements 36
5.5 Sanitary control programme 47
5.6 Laboratory control 47

6. Section V - End product specifications 47

Appendix I - Flow chart for handling crabs 48

Appendix II - References to related codes and standards 49

FAO, Code of practice for smoked fish. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Circ., (321) Rev.1:27 p. 1977

Page

1. Section I - Scope 1

2. Section II - Definitions 1

3. Section III - Raw material requirements 3

3.1 General considerations 3

4. Section IV - Plant facilities and operating requirements 3

4.1 Plant construction and layout 3
4.2 Equipment and utensils 9
4.3 Hygienic operating requirements 12
4.4 Operating practices and production requirements 16
4.5 Sanitary control programme 24
4.6 Laboratory control 24

5. Section V - End product specifications 24

Appendix I - Flow diagram for smoked fish processing operation 25

Appendix II - Preparation of brine of required strength 26

Appendix III - References to related codes and standards 27

FAO, Freezing in fisheries. Rome, FAO, FAO Fish.Tech.Pap., (167):83 p. 1977

		Page
1.	Freezing of fish	1
	The purpose of freezing fish	1
	How fish go bad	1
	What happens during freezing	2
	What is quick freezing	3
	Double freezing	4
	Codes of practice	4
	Handling of fish before freezing	5
	Frozen fish products	6
2.	Freezers	7
	Types of freezer	8
	Freezer operating temperatures	30
	Space requirements for freezing	31
	Labour requirement for freezing	32
	Calculation of freezer refrigeration load	32
	Ordering freezers	33
3.	Freezing time	35
	Variables which affect freezing time	35
	Calculation of freezing time	37
	Sample freezing times	39
4.	Treatment of fish after freezing	39
	Glazing	39
	Packaging	40
	Transfer to store	41
5.	Cold stores	41
	Recommended storage temperature	41
	Factors limiting storage life	42
	Store operating conditions	43
	Types of cold store	44
	Factors affecting storage conditions	46
	Product handling and storage	50
	Calculation of cold store refrigeration load	53
	Cold store capacity	54
	Ordering cold stores	55
6.	Weight loss from fish during freezing and cold storage	55
	Freezer weight loss	55
	Cold store weight loss	57
7.	Finance of freezing and cold storage	58
	Cost of freezing	58
	Costing of freezing	61
	Cold store costs	63
	Costing of cold storage	63
8.	Freezing at sea	65
	Why freeze at sea?	65
	Type of freezer vessel	65
	How good are sea-frozen fish?	66
	Freezers for use at sea	66

	Handling fish before freezing	67
	Handling frozen fish	69
	Cold stores on freezer vessels	69
	Unloading freezer vessels	71
9.	Transport of frozen fish	72
10.	Refrigeration plant requirements	73
	Compressors	73
	Condensers	73
	General notes on refrigeration plant	74
	Power requirements	74
11.	Refrigeration plant operators	75
12.	Temperature measurement of fish	76
	Temperature measurement of wet fish	76
	Temperature measurement of fish during freezing	77
	Temperature measurement of frozen fish	78
	Summary of rules for measuring fish temperature	79
13.	Some related facts and figures	79
14.	Conversion factors	83
	Metric and British units	83
	Metric, British and SI units	83

FAO/WHO Codex Alimentarius Commission, Joint FAO/WHO Food Standards Programme, 1976. Recommended international code of practice for canned fish. Rome, FAO, CAC/RCP10-1976:42 p.

		Page
1.	Section I - Scope	1
2.	Section II - Definitions	1
3.	Section III - Raw material requirements	2
	3.1 General considerations	2
4.	Section IV - Plant facilities and operating requirements	4
	4.1 Plant construction and layout	4
	4.2 Equipment and utensils	11
	4.3 Hygienic operating requirements	13
	4.4 Operating practices and production requirements	15
	4.5 Sanitary control programme	30
	4.6 Laboratory control	30
5.	Section V - End product specifications	30
	Appendix I - Factors affecting quality	31
	Appendix II - Schematic diagram of "Double Seam"	39
	Appendix III - Subject index	40
	Appendix IV - References to related codex codes and standards	42

FAO/WHO Codex Alimentarius Commission, Joint FAO/WHO Food Standards Programme, 1976 Recommended international code of practice for fresh fish. Rome, FAO, CAC/RCP9-1976:40 p.

		Page
1.	Section I - Scope	1
2.	Section II - Definitions	1
3.	Section III - Raw material requirements	2
	3.1 General considerations	2
4.	Section IV-A - Fishing vessel facilities and operating requirements	3
	4.1 General considerations	3
	4.2 Fishing vessel construction and sanitary design	3
	4.3 Sanitary facilities	6
	4.4 Equipment and utensils	9
	4.5 Hygienic operating requirements	10
	4.6 Handling the catch on board	12
	4.7 Unloading the catch	17
	4.8 Sanitary control programme	18
5.	Section IV-B - Plant facilities and operating requirements	19
	5.1 Plant construction and layout	19
	5.2 Equipment and utensils	24
	5.3 Hygienic operating requirements	26
	5.4 Operating practices and production requirements	30
	5.5 Sanitary control programme	36
	5.6 Laboratory control	36
6.	Section V - End product specifications	37
	Appendix I - General principles of fish spoilage	37
	Appendix II - Subject index	38
	Appendix III - References to related codex codes and standards	40

Forrest, D.M., 1976 Eel capture, culture, processing and marketing. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 203 p., 66 photographs, 24 figs., 49 tables

→ Aquaculture

Heiss, R. (ed.), 1970 Principles of food packaging: an international guide. Rome, FAO, 332 p.

		Page
1.	An explanation of some important basic packaging terminology	1
	Special questions of packaging of foods	9
2.	Influence of packaging on the shelflife of foodstuffs	11
3.	Packaging requirements of foodstuffs	22
	Flexible packaging materials	33
4.	Cost table: papers, films, foils	35
5.	Paper	37
6.	Regenerated cellulose films for food packaging	49

7a. Plastic films 54
7b. Heat-sealing methods 61
8. Aluminium foils and combinations 66
9. Adhesives used in packaging industries 72

Food packaging and equipment 77

10a. Cartons and boxes made from non-coated board 79
10b. Cartons and boxes made from coated board 92
11. Tinplate cans 102
12. Glass packaging 117
13. Plastic bottles and containers 133
14a. Rigid aluminium cans for sterilization 141
14b. Flexible and semi-rigid containers for heat sterilization 148
15a. Basic considerations for leak-proof bags 154
15b. Preformed bags, made from paper, regenerated cellulose films and aluminium foils 158
15c. Dustproof, vapourproof and gasproof packages, and machines for automatically forming, filling and closing them 165

Shipping materials and equipment 179

16a. Multiwall shipping sacks 181
16b. Polyethylene bags and sacks 197
16c. Jute sacks and bags 204
16d. Woven plastic sacks 217
17. Fibreboard shipping containers including waterproof boxes 220
18. Metal drums in the food industry 245

Food packaging in the tropics 253

19. Packaging and protection against insects in tropical and sub-tropical areas 255
20a. Packaging sub-tropical and tropical fruits, vegetables, and nuts 270
20b. Packaging dried fruit 280
21. Test methods for packaging materials 287
22. Specifications for packaging 303

India, Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Preliminary guide to
1951 Indian fish, fisheries, methods of fishing and curing. Nagpur, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (66):137 p., 66 plates

→ Biology

India, Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Marketing of fish in
1961 India. Nagpur, Directorate of Marketing and Inspection, Agric.Market.Ser., India, (126): 212 p., 36 plates and tables

→ Economics

Institut International du Froid, Refrigeration techniques in developing countries. Paris, Institut International du Froid, 116 p.
1965

		Page
	Introduction	11
1.	The need for refrigeration and the organization of refrigerating equipment in the food industry	15
	1.1 The need for refrigeration	15
	1.2 Planning of refrigerating equipment	16
2.	Cold storage methods for perishable foodstuffs	18
	2.1 A summary of some techniques	18
	2.2 The application of these methods to "tropical" countries	21
3.	Some aspects in the refrigerated treatment of perishable foodstuffs	23
	3.1 Meat	23
	3.2 Fish	27
	3.3 Milk and dairy products	30
	3.4 Other animal products	34
	3.5 Fruit and vegetables	35
4.	Refrigeration in the processing of agricultural produce (food industries)	40
	4.1 Breweries	40
	4.2 Fruit juice	40
	4.3 Carbonated drinks	41
	4.4 Fat processing industries	41
	4.5 Chocolate manufacture	41
5.	Refrigeration equipment in the food industry	42
	5.1 The production of cold	42
	5.2 Cold stores	60
	5.3 Ice making	75
	5.4 Some technical aspects	79
	5.5 The preparation of fresh water from saline or brackish water	89
6.	Air conditioning	91
	6.1 Definition and scope	91
	6.2 The desired requirements of air conditioning	93
	6.3 Various air conditioning processes	94
	6.4 The conventional method of air conditioning using mechanical refrigeration	95
	6.5 Air conditioning through evaporative cooling	98
	6.6 Air drying by absorption or adsorption	102
	6.7 Some conclusions on the aspects of air conditioning in developing countries	104
7.	The application of refrigeration in various industrial processes	107
	7.1 Generalities	107
	7.2 The metallurgical and mechanical industries	107
	7.3 The chemical industries	107
	7.4 Gas liquefaction	108
	7.5 The pharmaceutical industry	108
	7.6 The foodstuff industry	108
	7.7 Refrigeration in public works	108

8.	Biological and medical applications of refrigeration	109
	8.1 Medicine for mankind	109
	8.2 Veterinary medicine	111
9.	Conclusions	113

Kainuma, M., 1969 A handbook of the poisonous fishes and shellfishes; illustrated in life color. Tokyo, Suisan Shokuhin Eisei Kyogi-kai, (Japanese text, pp.1-62, English text, pp.63-193)

		Page
1.	Ciguatoxic fishes	69
	Distribution of ciguatoxic fishes	70
	The features of ciguatoxic fishes	70
	Origin of toxin in ciguatoxic fishes	71
	General symptoms of ciguatera	71
	Toxic substances in ciguatoxic fishes	72
2.	Toxic fishes and shellfishes in Japan	74
	Poisonous fishes	74
	Toxic shellfishes	78
	The others	79

Kramer, A. and B.A. Twigg, 1970 Quality control for the food industry. Vol.1. Fundamentals. Westport, Conn., Avi Publishing Co., 556 p., 3rd ed.

		Page
1.	Responsibilities and organization of the quality control department	1
2.	Some general principles	10
3.	Color and gloss	19
4.	Viscosity and consistency	43
5.	Size and shape	63
6.	Defects	72
7.	Kinesthetics or texture	83
8.	Flavor	106
9.	Taste testing	120
10.	Microanalytical and microbiological methods	155
11.	Chromatographic methods	206
12.	Government and trade standards of quality	237
13.	Development of grades and standards of quality	253
14.	Acceptance sampling and inspection	284
15.	Recording and reporting - control charts	328
16.	Evolutionary operations - EVOP	357
17.	Production control	370
18.	Inventory control and budgeting	397
19.	Transportation	432
	Appendix I - Outline of statistical methods	452
	Appendix II - Glossary of symbols and terms	533
	Index	577

Kramer, A. and B.A. Twigg, Quality control for the food industry. Vol.2. Applications. Westport, 1973 Conn., Avi Publishing Co., 550 p., 3rd ed.

		Page
1.	Sulzbacher, W.L., Meat and meat products	1
2.	Taylor, M.H. and D.E. Bigbee, Poultry and egg products	40
3.	Arbuckle, W.S., Dairy products	92
4.	Kramer, A., Fruits and vegetables	157
5.	Matthews, R.F. and L.E. Gray, Citrus products	229
6.	Pomeranz, Y., Cereals and cereal products	266
7.	Weiss, T.J., Fats and oils	328
8.	Bednarezyk, A.A., Spices	353
9.	National Canners Association, Sanitation	384
10.	Wilson, J.M. and B.A. Twigg, Water and waste control	415
11.	Davis, C.A. and A. Kramer, Methods of nutrient analysis	468
	Appendix	507
	Index	545

Kreuzer, R. (ed.), Freezing and irradiation of fish. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 519 p., 1969 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	Freezing fish at sea (techniques and equipment, factors affecting quality, freezing media and super chilling)	1 - 127
2.	Freezing and processing of frozen fish (physical effects of freezing, specific problems and techniques, the effect of polyphosphate treatment, the freezing of tropical fish and the thawing of frozen fish)	129 - 223
3.	Economics of producing and marketing frozen fish products	225 - 316
4.	The quality of frozen fish products and its assessment	317 - 380
5.	Storage, packaging and distribution of frozen fish products	381 - 423
6.	Preservation of fishery products in irradiation	425 - 519

References at the end of each contribution to the different chapters

University level

Kreuzer, R. (ed.), Fish inspection and quality control. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 290 p., 1971 figs., tables

		Pages
1.	The need for fish inspection	1 - 13
2.	Fish inspection programmes	15 - 58
3.	Inspection of fish and fishery products (fresh, pre-cooked and frozen fish; canned fish; cured and comminuted products; fish protein concentrate; specific problems)	59 - 133
4.	Industrial and commercial aspects of quality control	135 - 170
5.	Methods of quality assessment (organoleptic assessment; objective methods)	171 - 219
6.	Hygienic and safety aspects of quality control	221 - 267
7.	Training in fish inspection and quality control	269 - 281
8.	International cooperation in the promotion of quality control	283 - 290

References at the end of each contribution to the 8 chapters

Kreuzer, R. (ed.), Fishery products. West Byfleet, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 462 p., 126 figs., 145 tables
1975

		Pages
1.	The influence of tradition and change	22 - 61
2.	Present products and progress in techniques	63 - 181
3.	Problems and trends in the utilization of specific resources (fish resources; shellfish resources; farmed and freshwater fish)	183 - 275
4.	Product development	277 - 318
5.	Quality requirements in product development and trade	319 - 345
6.	Markets	347 - 399
7.	Training in fish processing technology	401 - 418
8.	International cooperation	419 - 450
	Index	451 - 462

Lamoureux, V.B., Guide to ship sanitation. Geneva, World Health Organization, 119 p., 51 figs., tables
1967

→ Safety and health

Mead, J.T., Marine refrigeration and fish preservation. Birmingham, Mich., Business News Publishing Co., 248 p., figs.
1973

		Pages
1.	Why refrigerate a vessel?	1 - 14
2.	Refrigeration principles	15 - 44
3.	Refrigeration systems, components and accessories	45 - 96
4.	Power sources	97 - 110
5.	Selection of systems	111 - 138
6.	Preserving the quality of the catch	139 - 168
7.	The processor and the freezer vessel	169 - 184
8.	Planning the installation of vessel refrigeration	185 - 203
9.	Maintenance	204 - 224
10.	The future	225 - 230
	Appendixes (conversion factors, federal financial assistance program; capital construction fund; freezer application form and vessel survey; freezer compression specification sheet; maintenance check list; brine solution and corn syrup glazes)	231 - 243
	Index	244 - 248

Merritt, J.S., Refrigeration on fishing vessels. London, Fishing News (Books), 1[illegible] p., 17 figs., 2 tables
1969

		Pages
1.	Spoilage and refrigeration	17 - 24
2.	Icing	25 - 42
3.	The fishroom	43 - 47
4.	Fishroom insulation	48 - 56
5.	Mechanical refrigeration with ice	57 - 70
6.	Refrigerated sea water	71 - 77
7.	Refrigeration plant	78 - 86
8.	Freezers	87 - 112

9. The cold store 113 - 120
10. Freezing at sea 121 - 141

Index 142 - 148

Nair, R.V., 1973 Indian sardines, their biology and fishery. New Delhi, CSIR Information Directorate. Zool.Monogr.Counc.Sci.Ind.Res., India, (2):107 p., 24 figs., 23 tables

→ Biology

OECD (Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development), 1970 Packages and packaging materials for fish. Paris, OECD, 95 p., 49 figs., 5 tables

Pages

1. Returnable fish boxes 9 - 29
2. Non-returnable fish boxes 31 - 46
3. Prepackaged wet fish 47 - 53
4. Packaging of frozen fish 55 - 75
5. Edible coatings 77 - 78
6. Properties of plastic films used in packaging 79 - 84

Appendixes

Trade names (for plastics) 87 - 89
Draft code of practice for the preparation and retailing of prepackaged wet white fish as recommended by the WFA and Torry Research Station of the U.K. 91 - 95

References at the end of each chapter

OECD (Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development), 1978 Multilingual dictionary of fish and fish products. Farnham, Surrey, Fishing News (Books), 430 p., 2nd ed.

Pages

Dictionary, alphabetical 1 - 314

English 316
French 335
Scientific names 346
German 362
Danish 369
Spanish 373
Greek 378
Italian 381
Icelandic 388
Japanese 392
Norwegian 397
Dutch 402
Portuguese 410
Swedish 416
Turkish 422
Serbo-Croat 426

A., Seaweeds and their uses in Japan. Tokyo, Tokai University Press, 165 p.

		Page
I.	Introduction	1
	A. Seaweeds and their distribution in Japan	1
	B. Seaweeds' production of Japan	3
	C. Survey of culture and use	6
	D. Seaweeds' value as shellfish feed and as shelter for fish egg and spawn	16
II.	Konbu ("Laminaria") fisheries and its processed products	19
	A. Species of "Laminaria" and their distribution	19
	B. Harvesting	21
	C. Kinds of processed "Laminaria"	21
	D. Uses and economic importance	24
	E. Export of "Laminaria" and its official export standard	25
III.	Wakame (Undaria) fisheries	29
	A. Species and distribution	29
	B. Harvesting and production	31
	C. Propagation and culture	32
	D. Processed production	35
IV.	Purple laver (porphyra) industry	37
	A. History	37
	B. Method of culture	39
	C. Process of purple laver	46
	D. Production	47
	E. Uses and commercial value	49
V.	Alginate industry	52
	A. Raw material seaweeds	52
	B. Manufacture	55
	C. Production and consumption	65
	D. Kinds of production and their uses	68
	E. Inspection method of sodium alginate	77
	F. Investigation of manufacturing process of by-products and its flowsheet	79
VI.	Red seaweed paste industry	82
	A. Paste made of "Gloiopeltis"	82
	B. Carrageenan industry	87
	C. Paste made from other red seaweeds	92
	D. Production of paste material red seaweeds	97
VII.	Agar-agar industry	98
	A. Material seaweeds	98
	B. Manufacture	111
	C. Survey of uses	140
	D. List of agar-agar makers in Japan	151
	E. Economic aspect of agar-agar industry	152
	F. Japanese official export standard of agar-agar and official inspection method	154
	G. Statistic seaweed and agar-agar production	161
VIII.	Seaweed uses as fertilizer and feedstuff	162
	A. Fertilizer	162
	B. Feedstuff	163

Oliver, R.C., Trawlermen's handbook. London, Fishing News (Books), 228 p., 133 figs., 5 colour plates,
1965 4 black and white plates

——→ Fishing

Rogers, J.F., R.C. Cole and J.D. Smith, An illustrated guide to fish preparation. London, Tropical
1975 Products Institute, 73 p.

	Page
Introduction	1
Fish types	3
Glossary	5
Equipment	9
Hygiene	10
Fish preparation - cutting sequences	
A freshwater catfish - (Bagrus docmac) gutting, single filleting	11
A round bodied marine fish - haddock (Melanogrammus aeglefinus) single and block fillets, skinning fillets and splitting for salting and smoking	20
A round bodied marine fish - cod (Gadus morhua) splitting for salting and drying	35
A deep bodied freshwater fish - (Tilapia esculenta) single filleting	40
An oily soft fleshed marine fish - herring (Clupea harengus) splitting for salting and smoking (kippering), hand gutting	46
A bony flatfish - plaice (Pleuronectes platessa) filleting	53
A small shark - spur dogfish (Squalus acanthias) general preparation	59
A flattened elasmobranch fish - thornback ray (Raja clavata) wing removal	65
Appendix 1 - Equipment	68
Appendix 2 - Hygiene	71
Bibliography	73

Syme, J.D., Fish and fish inspection. London, H.K. Lewis & Co., 162 p., 90 figs., tables
1949

Tanikawa, E., Marine products in Japan. Tokyo, Koseisha-Koseikaku Co., 507 p., tables
1971

	Pages
1. Outline of Japanese fishery	1 - 18
2. Manufactured marine products	19 - 28
3. Refrigeration and cold storage of marine products	29 - 71
4. Canned marine products	71 - 91
4.1 Salmon canning	92 - 126
4.2 Sardine - canning industry	126 - 140

4.3	Saury - canning industry	140 - 146
4.4	Tuna - canning industry	146 - 157
4.5	Mackerel - canning industry	157 - 162
4.6	Herring - canning industry	162
4.7	Horse mackerel - canning industry	162 - 164
4.8	Canning of other fish	164 - 167
4.9	Crab - canning industry	167 - 182
4.10	Shrimp - canning industry	182 - 184
4.11	Oyster - canning industry	184 - 187
4.12	Canned abalone	188 - 189
4.13	Canned top-shell meat	189 - 190
4.14	Clams - canning industry	190 - 192
4.15	Canned "hen" clams	192 - 195
4.16	Canned "Aka-gai"	195
4.17	Scallop - canning industry	195 - 197
4.18	Canning of other shellfish	197
4.19	Canned squid	197 - 199
4.20	Canned octopus	199 - 201
4.21	Whale meat canning industry	201 - 204
4.22	Canned seaweeds	204
4.23	Other canned marine foods	204
5.	Dried marine products	212 - 216
5.1	Plain dried products (air-drying)	216 - 239
5.2	Boiled-dried products	239 - 247
5.3	Broiled-dried products	247 - 248
5.4	Salted-dried products	248 - 254
5.5	Frozen-dried products	254 - 268
5.6	Dried fish sticks	268 - 274
5.7	Seasoned-dried fish	274
5.8	Smoked fish and shellfish	275 - 280
5.9	Development of artificial dryers in Japan	280 - 284
5.10	Chemical additives to the dried marine products	284 - 294
6.	Fish salting industry	295 - 313
7.	Fermented marine food products	314 - 339
8.	Japanese-style fish meat pastes	340 - 372
9.	Fish sausage and ham industry	373 - 421
10.	Products seasoned with soybean sauce	422 - 431
11.	Fish scrap (cake) and fish meal industry	432 - 447
12.	Fish solubles industry	448 - 453
13.	Fish oil industry	454 - 465
14.	Fish liver oil industry	466 - 475
15.	Marine animal leather	476 - 478
16.	Fish glue	479 - 480
17.	Algine acid industry	481 - 484
18.	Insulin manufacturing	485 - 489
19.	Ornamental materials from marine products	490 - 496
20.	Pearl essence industry	497 - 498
Index		499 - 507

References at the end of some chapters

Tesch, F.W., The eel. Biology and management of anguillid eels. English edition edited by P.H. Greenwood.
1977 London, Chapman & Hall, 434 p., 128 figs., 42 tables

——→ Biology

Torry Research Station, Torry advisory notes. Aberdeen, Scotland, Torry Advis.Note, (1)-to date
1960-
to date

The Torry Research Station issues these notes since 1960 and is continuing to prepare further ones at irregular intervals. All aspects of fish handling, processing and distribution are treated. The following titles give some examples:

Torry advisory notes:

60. Waterman, J.J., Key to advisory notes no.1-59. 22p.
66. Keay, J.N., Handling and processing mackerel. 10 p., 3 figs., tables
68. Graham, J., Icemaking plant. 11 p., 3 figs., 3 tables
69. Keay, J.N., Cooke-freeze fish products. 7 p.
70. Waterman, J.J., Advice for the fish industry: who does what. 14 p.
72. Anon., Reducing odour in fish meal production. 8 p.
73. Kelman, J.H., Stowage of fish in chilled sea water. 10 p., 2 figs., 2 tables

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books), for FAO, 579 p.,
1955 604 figs., 80 tables (1st FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Paris 1953)

——→ Fishing vessels

Tropical Products Institute, Proceedings of the conference on the handling, processing and marketing
1977 of tropical fish. London, Tropical Products Institute, 511 p.

	Page
Session 1: Introduction	
Chikuni, S., Fish resources in the tropics	17
Jones, N.R. and J.G. Disney, Technology in fisheries development in the tropics	27
Discussion	33
Session 2: Microbiology and quality control	
Jones, D.T., Fish inspection and quality control in the U.K.	37
Garm, R. and L. Limpus, Organization of fish inspection programmes in developing countries	45
Shewan, J.M., The bacteriology of fresh and spoiling fish and the biochemical changes induced by bacterial action	51
Session 3: Fresh fish	
Lisac, H., Fresh fish: the problems in small-scale fisheries	105
Kamari, A., A.Z. Idrus and Zahara Merican, The handling and transportation of fish in Malaysia	115
Session 4: Frozen fish	
Krone, W., Frozen fish marketing in developing countries	189
Vidot, S. and C. Ratcliffe, The exportation of frozen fish from a developing small-scale fishery	195

Session 5: Fish meal, fish silage and new products

Barlow, S.M., Fishmeal manufacture in the tropics 223
Disney, J.G., I.M. Patterson and J. Olley, Recent developments in fish silage 231
Kuriyan, J.K., Fish product development in India 241

Session 6: Canned and other processed fish

James, D.G., Fish processing and marketing in the tropics: restrictions to development 299
Balachandran, K.K. and M.R. Nair, Prospects for canning fish and shellfish in India 305

Session 7: Shellfish

Peterkin, F.A., Historic and developmental problems in the Guianas and Caribbean shrimp fishing industry 363
Amla, B.L. and D.P. Sen, Export of shrimp from India 367
Young, N.W., The European market for tropical prawns 373
Jann, D.G., Bacteriology of shellfish with reference to international trade 377

Session 8: Fisheries development

Noal, R.A. et T. Legoin, Les problèmes rencontrés dans la modernisation de la pêche traditionnelle dans les pays en développement 425
Mathotho, A.J. and J.P. Rogers, Fisheries development in Malawi: commercial trawling 433

Session 9: Close

Jones, N.R., Commentary on the conference 491
Discussion 497
Concluding remarks 499

List of registered delegates 501

Waterman, J.J. and T. Graham. Ice in fisheries. Rome, FAO. FAO Fish.Circ., (54)Rev.1:51 p., 33 figs., 17 tables 1975

		Pages
1.	Preservative effects of chilling	1 - 4
2.	Nature and properties of ice	5 - 10
3.	Ice manufacturing equipment	11 - 16
4.	Ice plants	17 - 20
5.	Other methods of chilling (refrigerated sea water, superchilling)	21 - 37
6.	Chilling fish at sea	38 - 44
7.	Chilling fish on land	45 - 51
8.	Temperature measurement	52 - 54
9.	Some useful facts about water and ice	55 - 56
10.	Conversion factors (metric and British units)	57

WHO. Fish and shellfish hygiene. Report of a WHO Expert Committee convened in cooperation with FAO. Rome, FAO, 31 p. 1974

		Page
	Introduction	7
1.	Environmental factors in relation to fish and shellfish hygiene	9
2.	Principal human diseases resulting from ingestion or contact with fish and shellfish	12

3. Principal diseases of aquatic food animals and their public health importance 19
4. Biotoxins of marine fish and shellfish 22
5. Epidemiological investigation of fish- and shellfish-borne disease 25
6. The safe handling of fish and shellfish and their products 29
7. Special considerations with regard to molluscan shellfish 39
8. The use of certain chemicals and food materials in fish and shellfish cultivation 41
9. Special problems of fish and shellfish hygiene in warm climates and in developing countries 43
10. Public health problems arising from international trade 44
11. Fish and shellfish hygiene inspection services 47
12. Requirements for training and education 51
13. Recommendations 53

Acknowledgements 54

Annex 1 - Recognized fish- and shellfish-borne diseases of man 56

Annex 2 - Selected bibliography on matters related to fish and shellfish hygiene 60

Wood, P.C., 1976 Guide to shellfish hygiene. Geneva, World Health Organization, 80 p.

Page

1. Introduction 5

2. A brief description of the shellfish industry 8

2.1 Types of shellfish exploited commercially 8
2.2 Biology of commercial species 11
2.3 Molluscan fisheries 11
2.4 Crustacean fisheries 20

3. Diseases transmitted by shellfish 21

3.1 Bacterial infections and intoxications 21
3.2 Viral infections 25
3.3 Intoxication from biotoxins in shellfish 26
3.4 Parasitic infections 27
3.5 Chemical intoxications 28
3.6 Allergy 28
3.7 Occupational diseases 28
3.8 Other diseases associated with the consumption of shellfish 29

4. Marine environmental factors affecting the sanitary quality of molluscan shellfish 29

4.1 Physical factors 29
4.2 Biological factors 32
4.3 Importance of marine environment factors in the surveillance of shellfish-growing areas 36

5. Measures for ensuring the production and marketing of clean shellfish 37

5.1 Introduction of legislation 37
5.2 Establishment of a control service 38
5.3 Provision of facilities for the treatment and handling of polluted shellfish 39

5.4 Improvement of sanitary conditions in growing areas 40
5.5 Research and development 41

6. Surveillance 41

6.1 Objectives 41
6.2 Routine surveillance 42
6.3 Special surveillance when new molluscan shellfish resources are exploited 49
6.4 Interpretation of data for control purposes 49

7. Action to be taken following shellfish-borne disease incidents 52

7.1 Initial investigations 54
7.2 Immediate action to be taken when food poisoning from shellfish is suspected 54

Annex 1 - Selected bibliography on shellfish hygiene 58

Annex 2 - Shellfish microbiology - current laboratory methods and standards 63

Annex 3 - Shellfish biotoxins - current laboratory methods and standards 69

Annex 4 - Simple case-control studies for determining the mode of transmission of cholera 73

Contributors and reviewers 78

Zaitsev, V.P., Preservation of fish products by refrigeration. Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific
1965 Translation, IPST Cat.No.13601:315 p., 2nd ed.rev.

Page

I. Fish as raw material 1
II. Influence of low temperature on micro-organisms and post-mortem changes in fish 18
III. Characteristics of refrigerating media and basic processes of cold preservation 33
IV. Chilling of fish 46
V. Fish freezing 103
VI. Production of chilled and frozen fish fillets 192
VII. Storage of chilled and frozen fish 231
VIII. Planning commercial fishery cold stores and refrigerated vessels 262
IX. Fish thawing 287
X. Technological and chemical-bacteriological control in refrigerating plants 296

Bibliography 311

Explanatory list of abbreviated names of U.S.S.R. institutions and organizations appearing in this text 315

Zaitsev, V. et al., Fish curing and processing. Moscow, MIR Publishers, 722 p., 187 tables
1969

Page

1. Characteristics of fish as raw material for industry 17
2. Handling live fish 99

3. Transport, reception and storage of raw fish 114
4. Production of chilled and frozen fish 123
5. Salting and marinading 198
6. Processing roes 261
7. Mechanical and natural drying 293
8. Fish smoking 328
9. Sterilized tinned products 372
10. Production of animal feeding stuffs and technical products from fish 460
11. Technology for processing marine mammals 487
12. Production of pharmaceutical oils and vitamin preparations 543
13. Processing of commercial invertebrates 583
14. Processing seaweed 624
15. Packaging and ancillary materials 663

Index 692

List of common commercial fish, shellfish and marine mammals 718

SAFETY AND HEALTH

Medical guides; hygiene and sanitation; safety of crew and vessel

ILO (International Labour Organisation), Questions concerning fishermen. Geneva, ILO, 70 p. 1965

	Pages
Record of the preparatory technical conference on fishermen's questions	1 - 10
Appendix 1 - Text of the conclusions concerning:	
a. Training of fishermen	13 - 21
b. Accommodation on board fishing vessels	22 - 32
c. Fishermen's certificates of competency	33 - 37
Appendix 2 - Reports of the working party on:	
a. Vocational training and certificates	41 - 54
b. Accommodation on board fishing vessels	55 - 67
Appendix 3 - Summary	

ILO (International Labour Organisation), Fishermen's certificates of competency. Geneva, ILO, 116 p. 1965

ILO (International Labour Organisation), Conventions and recommendations adopted by the International Labour Conference 1919-1966. Geneva, ILO, 1176 p. 1966

	Pages
1958 Convention No. 108: Seafarers' identity documents convention	917 - 920
1958 Recommendation No. 105: Ships' medicine chests recommendation	921 - 923
1958 Recommendation No. 106: Medical advice by radio to ships at sea	924
1958 Recommendation No. 108: Social conditions and safety of seafarers in relation to registration of ships	926 - 927
1959 Convention No. 112: Minimum age for admission to employment as fishermen	977 - 979
1959 Convention No. 113: Medical examination of fishermen	980 - 982
1959 Convention No. 114: Fishermen's articles of agreement	983 - 986

IMCO (Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), International conference on safety of life
1974 at sea 1974. Final act of the conference including the convention. London, IMCO, 310

	Pages
Attachment 1	
International convention for the safety of life at sea, 1974	1 - 7
Annex - Regulations	
1. General provisions	8 - 16
2.1 Construction: subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installation	17 - 53
2.2 Construction: fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction	54 - 131
3. Life-saving appliances, etc.	132 - 162
4. Radiotelegraphy and radiotelephony	163 - 183
5. Safety of navigation	184 - 197
6. Carriage of grain	198 - 222
7. Carriage of dangerous goods	223 - 226
8. Nuclear ships	227 - 229
Appendix	
Certificates	230 - 243
Attachment 2	
Resolutions	244 - 249
Attachment 3	
Recommendations applicable for nuclear ships	250 - 254

IMCO (Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), International conference on the revision
1974 of the international regulations for preventing collisions at sea, 1972. Final act of the conference including the convention. London, IMCO, 128 p.

	Pages
Final act of the conference	4 - 7
Attachment 1	
Convention of the international regulations for preventing collisions at sea	32 - 36
International regulations	36
1. General	36 - 38
2. Steering and sailing rules	38 - 46
3. Light and shapes	46 - 54
4. Sound and light signals	54 - 57
5. Exemptions	58
Annex	
a. Positioning and technical details of light and shapes	59 - 64
b. Additional signals for fishing vessels fishing in close proximity	65
c. Technical details of sound signals appliances	66 - 68
d. Distress signals	69 - 70
Attachment 2	
Resolution 1	71
Attachment 3	
Resolution 2	72

IMCO (Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), Code of safety for fishermen and fishing
1975 vessels. London, IMCO for FAO, ILO and IMCO. Part B: Safety and health, requirements for the construction and equipment of fishing vessels. London, IMCO, for FAO, ILO and IMCO, 158 p., figs. and tables

		Pages
1.	General provisions	9 - 14
2.	Hull and equipment	15 - 17
3.	Freeboard, watertight integrity and freeing ports	18 - 23
4.	Stability	24 - 32
5.	Machinery and electrical installations	33 - 43
6.	Fire protection, fire detection, fire extinction and fire-fighting equipment	44 - 55
7.	Protection of the crew	56 - 63
8.	Life saving applicants	64 - 67
9.	Radiotelegraphy and radiotelephony	68 - 69
10.	Shipborne navigational equipment	70 - 72
11.	Crew accomodation	73 - 77
	Appendixes	
a.	Illustrations of terms used in the definitions	78 - 83
b.	Recommended practice for anchor and mooring equipment	84 - 87
c.	Memorandum to administrations on an approximate determination of ship's stability by means of the rolling period tests (for ships up to 70 m in length)	88 - 95
d.	Recommended practice on potable fish-hold divisions	96 - 100
e.	Recommended practice for ammonia refrigeration systems in manned spaces	101
f.	Recommended contents of fishing vessels' medicine chest	102 - 116
g.	Recommendation for testing life-jackets	117 - 119
h.	Recommendations on performance standards for certain shipborne electronic aids to navigation including radar, radio direction finders, echosounders, gyro-compasses	120 - 134
i.	Recommended standards for pilot ladders	135

IMCO (Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), Code of safety for fishermen and fishing
1975 vessels. London, IMCO for FAO, ILO and IMCO. Part A: Safety and health, practice for skippers and crews. London, IMCO, for FAO, ILO and IMCO, 108 p.

		Pages
1.	General provisions	11 - 12
2.	Navigation	13 - 20
3.	Safety of vessel	21 - 24
4.	Safety on deck	25 - 29
5.	Safety in fishing operations	30 - 37
6.	Safety in machinery spaces and on mechanical equipment	38 - 45
7.	Special safety precautions	46 - 48
8.	Life saving appliances	49 - 50
9.	Fire precautions and fire fighting	51 - 53
10.	Shipboard facilities for personal, safety organization and conditions for employment	54 - 56
11.	Abandoning vessel, survival and rescue	57 - 62
	Appendixes	
a.	Regulation 3 of chapter V of the int. convention of the safety of life at sea, 1960: Information required in danger messages	63 - 65
b.	Radiotelephone procedures	66 - 69
c.	Recommendation of skippers of fishing vessels on ensuring a vessel's endurance in conditions of ice in formation	70 - 77

d. Recommended contents of fishing vessels' medicine chest 78 - 92
e. Artificial respiration 93 - 96
f. Information on hypothermia 97

Kainuma, M., A handbook of the poisonous fishes and shellfishes; illustrated in life color. Tokyo, 1969 Suisan Shokuhin Eisei Kyogi-kai, (Japanese text, pp. 1-62, English text pp. 63-193)

→ Processing

Lamoureux, V.B., Guide to ship sanitation. Geneva, World Health Organization, 119 p., 51 figs. and 1967 tables

Pages

1. Definitions 7 - 8
2. Potable water supply 8 - 13
3. Potable water system on board ships 13 - 27
4. Wash-water supply 27 - 29
5. Sanitary or overboard water systems 29 - 30
6. Swimming pools 30 - 32
7. Plumbing 32 - 38
8. Trade disposal 38 - 41
9. Food sanitation 42 - 57
10. Accommodation 57 - 58
11. Heating, ventilation and lighting 58
12. Rodent and vermin control 59 - 63
13. Sanitation of small craft and sailing ships 63 - 65

Annexes

a. Disinfection procedures 66 - 68
b. Criteria for the sanitary design, construction and installation of equipment used in food processing on board ship 69 - 75
c. Rust-proof construction 76 - 117

References 118 - 119

Noel, H.S. and A. Bowbeer (eds.), Fisherman's manual. London, World Fishing, 126 p., and figs. 1976

→ Fishing

Oliver, R.C., Trawlermen's handbook. London, Fishing News (Books), 228 p., 133 figs., 5 colour plates 1965 and 4 black and white plates

→ Fishing

Padelford, N.J., Public policy for seas. Cambridge, Mass., MIT Press, 338 p., tables and diagrams and 1970 14 illustrations

→ Economics

Scott, R.W., Handy medical guide for seafarers, fishermen, trawlermen and yachtsmen. London, Fishing
1969 News (Books), 86 p., 22 figs.

		Pages
1.	Examination and diagnosis	1 - 4
2.	Urgent first aid (artificial respiration to stop bleeding)	5 - 10
3.	Treatment of wounds	11 - 18
4.	Fractures, dislocations, sprains, strains	19 - 24
5.	Head injuries and the unconscious patient	25 - 26
6.	The digestive system and abdomen	27 - 32
7.	The chest, heart and lungs	33 - 35
8.	Fits and mental disorders	36 - 38
9.	Ear, nose and eye conditions	39 - 44
10.	Skin conditions and venereal diseases	45 - 48
11.	Burns and fire hazards	49 - 51
12.	Effects of cold and survival hazards	52 - 56
13.	Transport of casualties	57 - 62
14.	Miscellaneous (malingering, poisoning, drunkeness)	63 - 66
15.	Guide to items in medical chests	67 - 71
	Appendixes	
a.	The use of Morphia "Omnopon"	72 - 76
b.	Penicillin	77 - 78
c.	Medical advice by radio	79 - 80
d.	List of books	81
	Index	83 - 86

Popular

Sheldon, P.B., First aid afloat or what to do when the doctor can't come. New York, Yachting Publishing
1972 Corporation, 121 p., 35 figs.

		Pages
1.	General (ship's surgeon, medicine chest)	11 - 14
2.	Medical conditions: usually minor	25 - 43
3.	Conditions frequently requiring surgery: not infrequently serious	44 - 57
4.	Infections	58 - 62
5.	Heart attacks	63 - 64
6.	Dazed or unconscious states	65 - 74
7.	Swallowed poisons	75 - 76
8.	Eyes	77 - 80
9.	Orthopedic conditions	81 - 84
10.	Diving accidents	85 - 87
11.	Drowning	88 - 89
12.	Procedures (mouth-to-mouth resuscitation, heart massage, injections, sewing up a wound)	90 - 115
	Index	117 - 121

Popular

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 1. London, Fishing News (Books) for FAO 579 p., 604
1955 figs. and 80 tables. (First FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Paris 1953)

→ Fishing vessels

Traung, J.-O. (ed.), Fishing boats of the world. 2. London, Fishing News (Books) for FAO, 781 p., 800
1960 figs. and 191 tables. (Second FAO International Fishing Boat Congress, Rome 1959)

→ Fishing vessels

United Nations, National legislation and treaties relating to the territorial sea, the contiguous zone,
1970 the continental shelf, the high seas and to fishing and conservation of the living resources of the sea. United Nations Legislative Series. New York, United Nations, 931 p.

→ Legislation

United Nations, National legislation and treaties relating to the law of the sea. United Nations
1974 Legislative Series. New York, United Nations, 604 p.

→ Legislation

WHO (World Health Organization), International medical guide for ships. Geneva, WHO, 404 p., 63 figs.
1967

		Pages
1.	International medical guide for ships	9
1.1	Anatomy and physiology	11 - 21
1.2	Causes and prevention of disease	22 - 43
1.3	First aid	44 - 111
1.4	General nursing	112 - 148
1.5	Diagnosis	149 - 153
1.6	Wounds	154 - 165
1.7	Inflammation	166 - 173
1.8	Sprains and dislocations	174 - 178
1.9	Fractures	179 - 195
1.10	Diseases of the respiratory system	196 - 206
1.11	Diseases of the digestive system and abdominal organs	207 - 225
1.12	Diseases of the genito-urinary system	226
1.13	Diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders	236 - 245
1.14	Diseases of the heart and circulatory system	246 - 251
1.15	Infections and parasitic diseases	252 - 286
1.16	Venereal diseases	287 - 294
1.17	Diseases of the ear	295 - 298
1.18	Diseases of the eye	299 - 303
1.19	Diseases of the skin	304 - 316
1.20	Diseases of muscles and joints	317 - 319
1.21	Miscellaneous conditions	320 - 328
1.22	Childbirth	329 - 334
1.23	Death	335 - 338
1.24	Notes on medicines and medical stores	339 - 348
2.	The ship's medicine chest	351 - 361
3.	Medical section of the International Code of Signals	365 - 389
	Members of the Joint ILO/WHO Committee on the health of seafarers	391
	Index	395 - 404

WHO (World Health Organization), Vector control in international health. Geneva, WHO, 144 p., 14 figs.
1972 and tables

		Pages
1.	Vector control in ports and airports	3 - 13
2.	Biology and control of important insect vectors of disease	14 - 45
3.	Biology and control of domestic rodents	46 - 69
4.	Vector control in ships	70 - 72
5.	Vector control in aircraft	73 - 76
	Annex	
1.	Identification of vectors	79 - 124
2.	Tables of data for insect and rodent control	125 - 129
3.	The safe use of pesticides	130 - 134
4.	Extracts from the International Health Organization relating to vector and rodent control	135 - 141
	Index	143 - 144

WHO (World Health Organization), Fish and shellfish hygiene. Report of a WHO expert committee convened
1974 in cooperation with FAO. Rome, FAO, 62 p.

		Pages
1.	Environmental factors in relation to fish and shellfish hygiene	3 - 11
2.	Principal human diseases resulting from ingestion or contact with fish and shellfish	12 - 19
3.	Principal diseases of aquatic food animals and their public health importance	19 - 22
4.	Biotoxins of marine fish and shellfish	22 - 25
5.	Epidemiological investigation of fish- and shellfish-borne disease	25 - 28
6.	The safe handling of fish and shellfish and their products	29 - 38
7.	Special considerations with regard to molluscan shellfish	38 - 41
8.	The use of certain chemicals and food materials in fish and shellfish cultivation	41 - 43
9.	Special problems of fish and shellfish hygiene in warm climates and in developing countries	43 - 44
10.	Public health problems arising from international trade	44 - 47
11.	Fish and shellfish hygiene inspection services	47 - 51
12.	Requirements for training and education	51 - 54
13.	Recommendations	
	Annex 1: Recongized fish- and shellfish-borne diseases of man	58 - 59
	Annex 2: Selected bibliography on matters related to fish and shellfish hygiene	60 - 62

→ Processing

WHO (World Health Organization), International health regulations (1969) adopted by the Twenty-second
1974 World Health Assembly in 1969 and amended by the Twenty-sixth World Health Assembly in 1973.
Geneva, WHO, 102 p.

		Pages
1.	Definitions	7 - 10
2.	Notifications and epidemiolgoical information	10 - 15
3.	Health organization	15 - 18
4.	Health measures and procedure	
	4.1 General provisions	19 - 21
	4.2 Health measures on departure	21

4.3 Health measures applicable between ports or airports of departure and arrival 22 - 23
4.4 Health measures on arrival 23 - 26
4.5 Measures concerning the internal transport of cargo, goods, baggage and mail 26 - 27

5. Special provisions relating to each of the diseases subject to the regulations 27

5.1 Plague 27 - 31
5.2 Cholera 32
5.3 Yellow fever 32 - 35
5.4 Small pox 36 - 37

6. Health documents 37 - 40
7. Charges 40 - 41
8. Various provisions 41 - 43
9. Final provisions 43 - 47

Appendixes 1-5 - Certificates and declarations 48 - 56

Annexes - 1-9 59 - 84

Index to the International Health Regulations 87 - 102

PUBLISHERS ADDRESSES

Academic Press Inc., Ltd. 24/28 Oval Road. London NW1 7DX, United Kingdom. Also at 111 Fifth Avenue New York, N.Y., 10003, U.S.A.

Addison-Wesley Publishing Group, De Lairessestraat 90, Amsterdam 1007 Netherlands. Also at West End House, 11 Hills Place, London WLR 2LR, United Kingdom

Agricultural Marketing Series, India, see: Government of India

George Allen & Unwin Ltd., Park Lane, Hemel Hempstead, Herts. HP2 4TE, United Kingdom. Also at 40 Museum Street, London WC1 1LU, United Kingdom

Edward Arnold (Publishers) Ltd., 25 Hill Street, London W1X 8LL, United Kingdom

Australian Government Publishing Service, Canberra, Australia

AVI Publishing Co., P.O. Box 831, Westport, Conn., 06880, U.S.A.

Ernest Benn Ltd., (Benn Bros. Ltd.), Sovereign Way, Tonbridge, Kent, TN9 1RW, United Kingdom

Blackwell Scientific Publications Ltd., Osney Mead, Oxford, OX2 OEL, United Kingdom

Blandford Press Ltd., Link House, West Street, Poole, Dorset, BH15 1LL, United Kingdom

Bridport-Gundry Ltd., Bridport, Dorset DT6 3QU, United Kingdom

British United Trawlers Ltd., Wickham Road, Fish Docks, Grimsby, United Kingdom

Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd., 52 Darnley Street, Glasgow G41 2SG, United Kingdom

Business News Publishing Co., P.O. Box 6000, Birmingham MI, 48012, U.S.A.

Butterworths (Publishers) Ltd., Borough Green, Sevenoaks, Kent TN15 8PH, United Kingdom

Cambridge University Press, The Pitt Building, Trumpington St., Cambridge, United Kingdom

Central Institute of Fisheries Education, B.P. No. 7392, Versova, Bombay 58, India

Central Institute of Fisheries Operatives, B.P. No. 1724 Dewans Road, Ernakulam, Cochin 16, S. India

Central Institute of Fisheries Technology, Chittoor Road, Ernakulam, Cochin 682011, S. India

Central Marine Fisheries Research Institute, Regional Centre, P.O. 623520, Tamil Nadu, S. India

Centre Technique Forestier Tropical, 45 bis ave. de la Belle-Gabrielle, 94 Nogent-sur-Marne, France

Chapman & Hall Ltd., (Associated Book Publishers Ltd.), 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE, United Kingdom

Chatto, Bodley Head & Cape Services Ltd., 9 Bow Street, Covent Garden, London WC2E 7AL, United Kingdom

Adlard Coles Ltd., (Granada Publishing Ltd.), P.O. Box 9, 29 Frogmore Street, St. Albans, Herts, AL2 2NF, United Kingdom

Rex Collings Ltd., 69 Marylebone High Street, London W1M 3AQ, United Kingdom

Cornell Maritime Press Inc., P.O. Box 109, Cambridge, Maryland, 21613, U.S.A.

Council of Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), Information Directorate, New Delhi, India

Croom Helm Ltd., 2 - 10 St. John's Rd., London, SW 11, United Kingdom

David and Charles (Holdings) Ltd., Brunel House, Newton Abbot, Devon, TQ12 2DW

John de Graff, Inc., 34 Oak Avenue, Clinton Corners, N.Y., 12514, U.S.A.

ELAC-Electroacoustic Gmbh (Elac), Westring 425/429, 2300 Kiel, Fed. Rep. of Germany

Paul Elek Ltd., 54-58 Caledonian Rd., London, N1 9RN, United Kingdom

Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company. P.O. Box 211, Amsterdam, Netherlands

Environment Agency of Japan, 1, 1-30 Chome, Kasiumigaseck, Chiyoda-Ku, Tokyo, Japan

Europa Publications Ltd., 18 Bedford Sq., London, WC1B 3JN, United Kingdom

Evans Brothers Ltd., Montague House, Russell Square, London, WC1B 5BX, United Kingdom

Faber & Faber Ltd., 3 Queen Square, London, WC1N 3AU, United Kingdom

FAO, Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations, Via delle Terme di Caracalla, 00100 Rome, Italy

Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Fisheries and Environment, Ottawa, Canada

Fishing News (Books) Ltd., 1 Long Garden Walk, Farnham, Surrey, United Kingdom (formerly West Byfleet, Surrey and 110 Fleet Street, London, EC4)

W.H. Freeman & Co., 660 Market Street, San Francisco, California 94 104 U.S.A. Also at 58 Kings Road, Reading, RG1 3AA, Berkshire, United Kingdom

German Foundation for International Development. D-1 Berlin-Tegel, Fed. Rep. of Germany

Ghana Universities Press, Accra (for distributor outside Ghana) see: Oxford University Press

Gordon & Breach Science Publishers Ltd., 41/42 William IV St., London, WC2, United Kingdom

Government of India, Ministry of Agriculture, Manager of Publications, New Delhi, India

Charles Griffin & Co. Ltd., 5A Crendon Street, High Wycombe, Bucks, HP13 6LE,

Harvard University Press, 79 Garden Street, Cambridge, Mass., 02138, U.S.A.

Heinemann Educational Books, Ltd., 48 Charles Street, London, W1X 8AH, United Kingdom

H.M.S.O. (Her Majesty's Stationary Office), Atlantic House, Holborn Viaduct, 49 High Holborn, London, EC1P 1BN, United Kingdom

Hindustan Publishers Corp. New Delhi, 6-U.B., Jawahar Nagar, Delhi - 110007, India

Hodder and Stoughton Ltd., St. Paul's House, Warwick Lane, London, EC4P 4AH, United Kingdom

Hollis and Carter Ltd., 9 Bow Street, London, WC2E 7AL, United Kingdom

Hutchinson Publishing Group, Ltd., 3 Fitzroy Square, London, W1P 6JD, United Kingdom

Hydrographic Department, Ministry of Defence, Taunton, Somerset, TA1 2DN, United Kingdom

ILO (International Labour Organisation), CH-1222 Geneva 22, Switzerland

IMCO (Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization), 104 Picadilly, London, W1V 0AE, United Kingdom

ISO (International Organization for Standardization) 1 rue de Varembé, Case Postale 56, CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Iliffe Books, Ltd., see: Butterworths (Publishers) Ltd.

India, Council for Agriculture Research, see: Central Institute of Fishery Technology, Cochin-682011, S. India

India, Ministry of Agriculture, see: Government of India

Institut International du Froid/International Institute of Refrigeration, 177 Boulevard Malesherbes, 75 Paris 17e, France

Institute of Marine Engineers, 76 Mark Lane, London EC3R 7JN, United Kingdom

Institute of Scientific Co-operation, Landhausstr. 18, D-7400 Tubingen, Fed. Rep. of Germany

International Cable Protection Committee, Mercury House, Theobalds Road, London WC1X 8RX, United Kingdom

International Marine Publishing Company, 21 Elm Street, Camden, Maine, 04843, U.S.A.

Israel Program for Scientific Translations Ltd., P.O. Box 7145, Jerusalem, Israel

Japan FAO Association, Bajishikusan-Kaikan, 2-1 Chome, Kanda-Surugadai, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Japan Fisheries Association, Sankaido-Building, 13, 9-1 Chome, Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Japan International Cooperation Agency, SEAFDEC Office, Shinjuku-Mitsui-Building, 1-2 Chome, Nishi-Shinjuku, Shinjuku-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Japan Publications Trading Co., Ltd. 15, 2-1 Chome, Saragaku-cho, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, Japan (Distribution: Prentice-Hall International Inc., 66 Wood Lane End, Hemel Hempstead, Herts, HP2 4RG, United Kingdom. Also at 301 Sylvan Avenue, Engelwood Cliffs, N.J., 07632, U.S.A.)

Dr. W. Junk B.V., Publishers P.O. Box 3713, The Hague, Netherlands

Kanagawa International Fisheries Training Center, 4500, Nagai-Cho, Yokosuka-City, Japan

Kaye and Ward, Ltd., 21 New Street, London EC2M 4NT, United Kingdom

Kosaisha-Koseikaku Comp., 8, Sanai-cho, Shinguku-ku, Tokyo, Japan

H.K. Lewis and Co. Ltd., P.O. Box 66, 136 Gower Street, London WC1E 6BS, United Kingdom

Liverpool University Press, 123 Grove St., Liverpool, L7 7AF, United Kingdom

Longman Group, Ltd., Longman House, Burnt Mill, Harlow, Essex CM20 2JE, United Kingdom

MIR Publishers, 2 Perry Riahsky, Pereulok, Moscow, U.S.S.R.

MIT Press, 28 Carleton St., Cambride, Mass., 02142, U.S.A. Also at 126 Buckingham Palace Road, London, SW1W 9D, United Kingdom

Macmillan Publishers, 60 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10011 U.S.A. Also at Little Essex Street, London, WC2R 3LF, United Kingdom

Marine Enterprises Company, Woodbridge, Suffolk, United Kingdom

Metropolitan Book, Co. PVT Ltd., Netaji Subhashi Mark, Delhi-6, India

Misaki International Fisheries Training Center, see: Kanagawa International Fisheries Training Center

John Murray (Publishers) Ltd., 50 Albermarle Street, London, W1X 4BD, United Kingdom

OECD (Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development), Publication Office, 2 rue André-Pascal, 75775 Paris Cedex 16, France

Ohio State University Press, Hitchcock Hall, Rm 316, 2070 Neil Avenue, Columbus, Ohio, 43210, U.S.A.

Overseas Fishery Cooperation Foundation, Sankaido-Building 13, 9-1 Chome, Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Overseas Technical Cooperation Agency, see: Japan International Cooperation Agency

Oxford University Press, Ely House, 37 Dover Street, London W1X 4AH, United Kingdom

Pearce Publications Ltd., 1-3 Bank St., Tonbridge, Kent, United Kingdom

Pergamon Press Ltd., Headington Hill Hall, Oxford OX3 OBW, United Kingdom. Also at Maxwell House, Fairview Park, Elmsford, N.Y., 10523, U.S.A.

Poseidon Publishing Co., Lakeville, Conn. (Distribution by: Taplinger Publishing Co., 200 Park Avenue, S. New York, N.Y., 10003, U.S.A.

Resources for the Future, Inc., 1755 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Washington D.C. 20036, U.S.A.

Routledge and Kegen Paul Ltd., Broadway House, Reading Road, Henley-on-Thames, Oxon, RG9 1EN, United Kingdom

Scientecnica, see: John Wright and Sons, Ltd.

Sea Fishes of Southern Africa Trust, P.O. Box 61 232, Marshalltown, South Africa 2107

Seeley, Service and Co. Ltd., 196 Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8JL, United Kingdom

Sidgwick and Jackson Ltd., 1 Tavistock Chambers, Bloomsbury Way, London, WC1A 2SG, United Kingdom

A.W. Sijthoff, Int. Publishing Company B.V., P.O. Box 26, Leiden, Netherlands

Simonson Radio AS (Simrad), Ensjøveien 18, Oslo 6, Norway

Springer-Verlag, Heidelberger Platz 3, 1 Berlin 33, Fed. Rep. o Germany

Stanford Maritime Ltd., 12-14 Long Acre, London WC2E 9LP, United Kingdom

Stevens and Sons Ltd. (Associated Book Publishers' Group), 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE, United Kingdom

Torry Research Station, Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, 135 Abbey Road, Aberdeen AB9 8DG, United Kingdom

Tropical Products Institute, 56-62 Gray's Inn Road, London WC1X 8LU, United Kingdom

United Nations, Sales Section, Publicity Service, New York, N.Y., 10017, U.S.A.

University of Rhode Island, URI Marine Adversory Service, Narragansett Bay Campus, Narragansett, RI 02882 U.S.A.

University of Toronto Press, University of Toronto, Toronto, Canada M5S IA6

University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA, 98105, U.S.A. Also at c/o American University Publishers' Group Ltd., 70 Gre Russell St., London WC18 3BY, United Kingdom

University of Wisconsin Press, P.O. Box 1379, Madison, Wisconsin 53701, U.S.A.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, see: U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle WA 98105, U.S.A.

White Fish Authority, 10 Young Street, Edinburgh, EH2 4JQ, United Kingdom

WHO (World Health Organization), Publication, Avenue Appis, CH-1211, Geneva 27, Switzerland

John Wiley and Sons Ltd., Wiley Interscience, Baffins Lane Chichester, Sussex, PO19 IUD, United Kingdom. Also at: 605 Third Avenue, New York, N.Y., 10016, U.S.A.

World Fishing, IPC Industrial Press Ltd., Dorset House, Stamford Street, London SE1 9LU, United Kingdom

John Wright and Sons Ltd., 42-44 Triangle West, Bristol, BS8 1EX, United Kingdom

Yachting Publishing Corporation, 50 West 44th Street, New York, N.Y., 10036, U.S.A.

Yale University Press, 92A Yale Sta., New Haven, Connecticut, 06520, U.S.A.

SELECTED ENGLISH LANGUAGE JOURNALS FOR FISHING, FISHERIES, BOATBUILDING, FISH UTILIZATION AND STATISTICS

Australian Fisheries, AGPS P.O. Box 84, Canberra 2600, Australia

Aquaculture, Associated Scientific Publishers, Journal Division, P.O. Box 211, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Bulletin of the International Institute of Refrigeration, 177, Boul. Malesherbes, Paris 75017, France

Canadian Fisherman and Ocean Science, Sentinel Publishing Company, 27 Centrale Street, La Salle, Quebec, Canada

Commercial Fishing, Commercial Fishing Enterpriser Ltd., Fish Trade Building, Fleetwood FY7 6HS, United Kingdom

FAO, Yearbook of fishery statistics (The volumes are subtitled in two series, Fishery commodities and Catches and landings). Rome, FAO, Via delle Terme di Caracalla, 00100 Rome, Italy

The Fish Boat, 624 Gravier St., New Orleans, LA. 70130, U.S.A.

Fish Farming International, Arthur Heighway Publications Ltd., Ludgate House, 110 Fleet Street, London EC4A 2JL, United Kingdom

Fishing Gazette, Fishing Gazette Publishing Corp., 461 Eighth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 1001, U.S.A.

Fishing News, Arthur J. Heighway Publications Ltd., Ludgate House, 110 Fleet Street, London EC4A 2JL, United Kingdom

Fishing News International, Arthur Heighway Publications Ltd., Ludgate House, 110 Fleet Street, London EC4A 2JL, United Kingdom

Fishing Technology, Society of Fisheries Technologists c/o Central Institute of Fisheries Technology, Wellingdon Island, Cochin-682003, Kerala, India

Holland Shipbuilding, C.E. Radius and P. Guppelaar, P.O. Box 277, 5, Grote Kerksplein, Dordrecht, The Netherlands

International Boat Industry, IPC Transport Press, Dorset House, Stamford Street, London SE1 9LU, United Kingdom

International Shipbuilding Progress, 193, Heemraadssingel, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Marine Fisheries Review, Superintendent of Documents. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402, U.S.A.

The motorship, Dorset House, Stamford Street, London, SE1 9LU, United Kingdom

National Fisherman, Circulation Office, 21 Elm Street, Camden, ME. 04843, U.S.A.

Ship and Boat International, Subscription Dept. S-150 30 Mariefred, Sweden

World Fishing. IPC Industrial Press Ltd., Dorset House, Stamford Street, London SE1 9LU, United Kingdom

M-45
ISBN 92-5-100663-6